

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Dedication	ii
Declaration	iii
Acknowledgements	iv
Abstract	
TABLE OF CONTENTS	ix
LIST OF TABLES	. xii
LIST OF FIGURES	xiii
Acronyms and Abbreviations	xiv
CHAPTER 1	1
INTRODUCTION	1
1.1 Background and Statement of the Problem	1
1.2 Objectives of the Study	3
1.3 Hypotheses of the study	4
1.4 Approaches and methods of the study	4
1.5 Organisation of the thesis	5
CHAPTER 2	6
WETLAND ECOSYSTEMS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA AND THEIR IMPORTANCE	Ξ
FOR HUMAN WELL-BEING	6
2.1 Introduction	6
2.2 Biophysical and socio-economic characteristics of the study area	6
2.2.1 Climate and major ecosystems	6
2.2.2 Demographic and socio-economic characteristics	. 10
2.3 Characterisation of wetland ecosystems	
2.3.1 Definition of wetlands	. 11
2.3.2 Types of wetland ecosystems	. 12
2.3.2.1 Marine systems	
2.3.2.2 Estuarine systems	. 14
2.3.2.3 Lacustrine systems	. 14
2.3.2.4 Palustrine systems	. 14
2.3.2.5 Riverine systems	. 15
2.3.2.6 Endorheic systems	. 15
2.3.3 The distribution of wetlands	
2.4 The importance of wetlands for human well-being	. 19
2.5 Major threats to wetland ecosystems in southern Africa	
2.6 Concluding Summary	. 27
CHAPTER 3	. 29
ANALYTICAL FRAMEWORK FOR RURAL HOUSEHOLDS RESOURCE	
ALLOCATION DECISIONS AMONG COMPETING LIVELIHOOD ACTIVITIES	. 29
3.1 Introduction	. 29
3.2 Review of selected literature on the determinants of rural household labour	
allocation decisions for competing livelihood activities	. 29
3.3 The Analytical Framework	. 37
3.4 Concluding Summary	. 43

CHAPTER 4	
EMPIRICAL MODEL AND RESULTS OF THE DETERMINANTS OF HOUS	
RESOURCE ALLOCATION AND SUPPLY DECISIONS	44
4.1 Introduction	
4.2 Description of the study area	
4.2.1 Location of the area	
4.2.2 Characterisation of the hydrology and ecology as well as trade-offs bet	
ecosystem services in the studied wetland system	
4.2.3 Main livelihood activities in the study area	50
4.3 Data and data collection methods	
4.4 The survey of wetland uses	
4.4.1 Edible plants collection	
4.4.2 Crop production	
4.4.3 Livestock grazing	
4.4.4 Reeds and sedge harvesting	
4.4.5 Domestic water abstraction	
4.5 The empirical model	
4.5.1 Model variables and expected direction of relationships	
4.5.2 Econometric estimation procedures	
4.6 Empirical results and discussion	
4.6.1 Summary statistics of variables used in the econometric analysis	
4.6.2 Econometric results	
4.7 Concluding Summary	
CHAPTER 5	
REVIEW OF APPROACHES TO ASSESS THE IMPACTS OF MANAGEMEN	
POLICY SCENARIOS ON ECOSYSTEM FUNCTIONING AND HUMAN WE	
BEING	
5.1 Introduction	
5.2 Review of analytical approaches	
5.2.1 Economic valuation	
5.2.2 Multi-criteria analysis	
5.2.3 Integrated ecological-economic models	
5.2.3.1 Heuristic models	
5.2.3.2 System dynamics models	
5.3 Approaches and methods of the study	
5.4 Concluding Summary	
CHAPTER 6	
EMPIRICAL MODEL AND RESULTS FROM ANALYISIS OF THE IMPACT	
ALTERNATIVE MANAGEMENT REGIMES ON WETLAND FUNCTIONING	
ECONOMIC WELL-BEING	
6.1 Introduction	
6.2 Conceptual framework	
6.3 The empirical model components and assumptions	
6.3.1 Hydrology module	
6.3.2 Crop production module	
6.3.3 Land use change module	99



6.3.4 Natural wetland vegetation module	101
6.3.5 The economic well-being module	104
6.4 The full system of equations showing the linkages between modelled eco	logical-
economic systems	109
6.5 Specification of model parameters and validation	114
6.6 Simulation of impacts of alternative wetland management and policy regi	mes 120
6.7 Concluding Summary	126
SUMMARY, CONCLUSIONS AND IMPLICATIONS FOR POLICY AND	
RESEARCH	128
7.1 Introduction	128
7.2 Summary of key findings and policy implications	128
7.3 Limitations of the study and areas for further research	131
REFERENCES	
APPENDICES	146
Appendix A1: First order conditions for the household optimisation model	146
Appendix A2: Logical rules for hydrological dynamics in the modelled wetla	nd 148
Appendix A3: Wetlands-based livelihoods agronomic and socio-economic ho	ousehold
questionnaire	149
Appendix A4: Household questionnaire used for economic valuation of providence	sioning
services of the Ga-Mampa wetland	175



# LIST OF TABLES

Table 2.1: Area under the Limpopo river basin by riparian country	7
Table 2.2: The main ecosystems of southern Africa	9
Table 2.3: Selected population statistics for the Limpopo basin	. 10
Table 2.4: Examples of major wetland types in southern Africa and the main services	
they provide	. 16
Table 2.5: Estimates of global wetland areas by Ramsar region	. 17
Table 2.6: Estimates of wetland area (in km <sup>2</sup> ) in Limpopo basin countries	19
Table 2.7: Ecosystem services provided by or derived from wetlands	21
Table 2.8: Net financial values per user household of selected services for selected	
wetland systems in southern Africa	. 24
Table 2.9: Major threats to wetlands in southern Africa ranked according to extent of	
occurrence	. 27
Table 4.1: Vegetation characteristics of the Ga-Mampa wetland	. 49
Table 4.2: Sample distribution of interviewed households	52
Table 4.3: Number of households using wetlands for different uses and estimated value	es
per household	. 54
Table 4.4 Definition of variables used in the econometric analysis	
Table 4.5: Descriptive statistics of variables used in the econometric analysis	
Table 4.6: Seemingly unrelated regression results for labour use in productive activities	
and supply of grain and wetland products.	
Table 6.1 Parameters used in the CROPWAT model for maize grain	. 98
Table 6.2: Definition of endogenous model variables	
Table 6.3: State variables (stocks) in the model	
Table 6.4: Parameter values and sources	
Table 6.5: Changes in value of selected indicator variables, expressed as percentages of	of
baseline values	122



# LIST OF FIGURES

Map showing (a) African river basins and (b) the Limpopo river basin
riparian countries
Wetland distribution and location of Ramsar sites across major river basins in
Sub-Saharan Africa
Linkages between wetland services and human well-being
Maps showing the location of the Limpopo province and the Ga-Mampa area
45
Contribution percentage of flow (i.e. monthly average) from the Mohlapitsi
catchment to the Olifants River
Conceptual picture of the main hydrological fluxes in the Ga-Mampa
wetland
Trend in wetland area in the Ga-Mampa wetland
The Total Economic Value framework
Analytical framework for evaluating the impacts of alternative wetland
ecosystem management and policy regimes on ecosystem functioning,
ecosystem services and human well-being
Conceptual framework showing the interactions between components of the
system90
Schematic representation of the main hydrological fluxes of the wetland 92
Comparison of model predicted and actual wetland area converted to
agriculture
Comparison of model predicted versus actual social grant rate



### **Acronyms and Abbreviations**

CBA Cost-Benefit Analysis

CPI Consumer Price Index

EPA Environmental Protection Agency

FAO Food and Agriculture Organization

GDP Gross Domestic Product

GLWD Great Lakes and Wetlands Database

MCA Multi-criteria Analysis

MEA Millennium Ecosystem Assessment

NTFP Non-Timber Forest Products

PCA Principal Component Analysis

SAR South Africa Rand

SUR Seemingly Unrelated Regressions

UNDP United Nations Development Programme

USD United States Dollars

USFWS United States Fish and Wildlife Service



#### **CHAPTER 1**

#### INTRODUCTION

#### 1.1 Background and Statement of the Problem

It is now widely recognised that rural communities with livelihood strategies that combine subsistence agriculture with the utilisation of wetland<sup>1</sup> resources constitute a significant proportion of the population in developing countries (Silvius *et al.*, 2000; Dixon and Wood, 2003; Adams, 1993). The report by the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (MEA) (2005) to the Ramsar Convention entitled 'Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Wetlands and Water synthesis' extensively documents the importance of ecosystem services provided by wetlands for human well-being.

In southern Africa, wetlands play a significant role in the livelihoods of rural communities (Taylor *et al.*, 1995; Breen *et al.*, 1997; Frenken and Mharapara, 2002). The ability of wetlands to store water during the wet season and release it during the dry season provides farmers, who live in semi-arid areas, with opportunities to grow crops all-year round thereby improving their food security and incomes. Besides crop production, wetlands provide other services that support people's livelihoods such as: dry season livestock grazing and watering; domestic water supply; fishing; and natural products (Matiza and Chabwela, 1992; Mmopelwa, 2006).

However, wetlands are sensitive ecosystems that are threatened by human interventions. Altering the wetland environment through conversion to croplands and other uses has the potential to degrade the wetland and undermine its capacity to provide services in the future. As in many other parts of the world, wetlands in southern Africa are being increasingly degraded and lost through conversion to croplands (Taylor *et al.*, 1995; Matiza and Chabwela, 1992; Breen *et al.*, 1997; Biggs *et al.*, 2004). This has been primarily driven by population growth and the increasing

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Wetland ecosystems are generally defined as 'areas of marsh, fen, peatland or water, whether natural or artificial, permanent or temporary, with water that is static or flowing, fresh, brackish or salt, including areas of marine water the depth of which at low tide does not exceed six metres' (Barbier *et al.* 1997; MEA 2005).



frequency of droughts. Given the importance of the direct and ecological services wetlands provide to human society, it is important that they are sustainably managed<sup>2</sup> so that they continue to provide services in the future.

Two major limitations to sustainable management of wetlands in Africa have been identified in the literature. The first limitation is that wetland users and decision-makers have insufficient understanding of the true values of wetlands and the consequences of alternative management and policy regimes on wetland functioning, ecosystem services and human well-being (Barbier, 1994; Schuyt, 2002; Schuyt, 2005).

The second limitation is the lack of understanding of the factors that influence people's decisions on the use of wetland resources. This aspect is critical, because while the use of wetlands is common in Africa, the extent to which households incorporate wetland activities into their livelihood strategies varies considerably due to significant socio-economic differentiation across households (McCartney and Van Koppen, 2004). Understanding how such differentiation influences the dependence on wetland resources is important when considering possible interventions for supporting rural livelihoods and promoting the sustainable use of wetlands.

In general, very little work has been done on the two constraints articulated above, particularly in southern Africa (Frenken and Mharapara, 2002). To the best of the author's knowledge: there is very little empirical knowledge of the impacts of alternative wetland management and policy regimes on wetland functioning, ecosystem services and economic well-being are currently available in southern Africa. This is particularly the case with modelling multiple benefits from an ecosystem to enable the evaluation of trade-offs between the provision of multiple

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Sustainable use or management of an ecosystem refers to human use of the ecosystem so that it yields continuous benefits to the present generation without compromising its potential to meet the needs of future generations (MEA 2003). The concept implies that people use and derive benefits from an ecosystem in a manner that does not exceed its carrying capacity and compromise the long-term productivity of the ecosystem. In contrast, ecosystem conservation implies non-use (strict protection) or maintenance of an ecosystem in its pristine state. It can be total (where the entire ecosystem is under protection) or partial conservation (where only parts of the ecosystem are under protection). Except in cases where a resource is non-renewable or its use has irreversible effects, strict conservation is seldom an optimal strategy especially in rural populations in Africa where the natural resource base is key to people's well-being.



services. Similarly, empirical knowledge on the factors that influence people's decisions on the use of wetland resources for wetland systems in the region is limited. Against this background, this study seeks to make two important contributions. The first is the analysis of the factors that influence household decisions on the use of wetland products using an agricultural household modelling framework. The framework takes into consideration the fact that rural households are both producers and consumers and that they allocate their scarce resources among competing livelihood activities.

The second contribution is the evaluation of trade-offs between provisions of various components of a bundle of multiple wetland services using a dynamic ecological-economic model to simulate the impacts of alternative policy and management regimes on wetland functioning, ecosystem services supply and human well-being. The results of this study should generate useful insights for improving policy and management interventions to promote the sustainable management of wetlands in southern Africa. The Ga-Mampa wetland, which is located in the Limpopo basin (on the South African part) of southern Africa, has been selected as the case study area.

#### 1.2 Objectives of the Study

The primary objective of this study is to: analyse rural households' resource allocations and decisions among competing livelihood activities including wetland activities; and evaluate the impacts of alternative policy and management regimes on wetland ecosystem functions and human well-being. The specific objectives are to:

- Identify the factors that influence rural household labour allocation and product supply decisions among competing livelihood activities, including wetland activities.
- Develop an ecological-economic model establishing the linkages between ecological and economic systems in a wetland system and apply the model to evaluate the impacts of alternative policy and management regimes on wetland functioning, ecosystem services supply and economic well-being.
- 3. Draw relevant policy recommendations for the sustainable management of wetlands based on the findings of the study.





#### 1.3 Hypotheses of the study

Based on findings in the literature on rural household labour allocation and supply decisions and also on the interactions between ecological and economic systems in developing countries, the following hypotheses are made:

- Higher education, wealth and access to off-farm income contribute to the reduced participation in on-farm and wetland activities, which have positive impacts on wetland conservation.
- 2. Policy interventions that promote diversification out of agriculture, such as improving access for the poor to off-farm income and employment opportunities, can simultaneously enhance people's economic well-being and wetland conservation.

#### 1.4 Approaches and methods of the study

Two main analytical approaches are employed to achieve the aforesaid study objectives. To pursue the first objective the agricultural household model is employed. The agricultural household model considers rural households to make joint production and consumption decisions to maximise utility. The model is used to derive a system of reduced form labour use as well as grain and wetland products supply equations, which are estimated jointly using a seemingly unrelated regression approach.

To achieve the second objective, an ecological-economic model, based on the system dynamics framework, is developed and applied. The system dynamics framework takes into consideration feedback effects between ecological and economic systems as well as involved trade-offs in the supply of individual constituents of multiple services provided by wetlands. This framework also captures the intertemporal effects of interventions on ecosystem dynamics. This model uses labour use with grain and wetland products supply functions' parameters estimated in the first part of the study.



#### 1.5 Organisation of the thesis

The following chapter presents background information on the biophysical and socioeconomic characteristics of the study area. It also briefly discusses: the characteristics of wetland ecosystems in southern Africa in terms of the main types of wetland ecosystems and their distribution; wetland services and their link to human wellbeing; and major threats to wetlands. Chapter 3 presents the analytical framework for analysing household labour allocation and supply decisions for alternative livelihood activities including wetland activities. The empirical model and results on the determinants of household labour allocation and supply decisions for wetland products and grain are presented and discussed in Chapter 4. Chapter 5 reviews analytical approaches used in analysing the linkages between ecological and economic systems and evaluating: the impacts of alternative management and policy scenarios on ecosystems and the supply of ecosystem services and economic wellbeing. Chapter 6 develops an empirical ecological-economic model establishing the linkages between the ecological and economic systems in the studied wetland and applies the model in simulating impacts of alternative management and policy regimes. Finally, Chapter 7 presents a general summary and conclusion and also derives policy implications based on the findings of the study.



#### **CHAPTER 2**

# WETLAND ECOSYSTEMS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA AND THEIR IMPORTANCE FOR HUMAN WELL-BEING

#### 2.1 Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of wetland ecosystems in southern Africa and demonstrates their significance for the well-being of people. The first section presents background information on the biophysical and socio-economic features of the study area. Section two characterises wetland ecosystems in the region in terms of the main types of wetland ecosystems and their distribution. The third section discusses the link between wetland ecosystem services and human well-being. The main threats to wetlands in southern Africa are discussed in section four and section five then concludes the chapter.

#### 2.2 Biophysical and socio-economic characteristics of the study area

#### 2.2.1 Climate and major ecosystems

The Limpopo Basin is situated in the eastern part of southern Africa and is one of the largest river basins in the region (Figure 2.1). The riparian countries are Botswana, Mozambique, South Africa and Zimbabwe. The drainage area of the river basin is estimated at 413 000 km<sup>2</sup> (FAO, 2004). Approximately 45% of the land area is located in South Africa (Table 2.1).

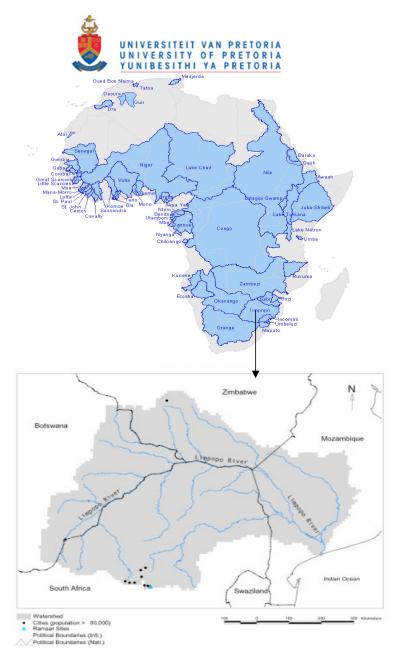


Figure 2.1: Map showing (a) African river basins and (b) the Limpopo river basin riparian countries (World Resources Institute, 2003)

Table 2.1: Area under the Limpopo river basin by riparian country

Riparian country	Area of country in basin (km²)	Percentage of total area of basin
South Africa	183,500	45
Mozambique	87, 200	21
Botswana	81, 500	20
Zimbabwe	62,600	15

Source: FAO (2004)

The climate of the Limpopo basin is predominantly semi-arid. Rainfall is very low and varies from approximately 300mm in the hot dry western parts in Botswana to



1000 mm in the high rainfall areas in the South African part of the basin (Rosenberg, 1999).

Rainfall in the Limpopo basin is highly seasonal with 95% of it occurring between October and April, often with mid-season dry spells occurring during the critical stages of crop growth. With the exception of small areas on the outer limits of the basin, the rainfall season is very short (FAO, 2004). Despite the periodic occurrence of short and intense storms, rainfall is generally erratic and unreliable, and droughts are frequent. The seasonal nature of rainfall is reflected in the highly seasonal water flows with some surface water bodies completely drying up during the dry season.

Evaporation rates are higher than rainfall, ranging from 800mm to 2400mm per year, with an average of 1970mm per year (FAO, 2004). These high evaporation rates reduce effective rainfall and soil infiltration thereby increasing chances of crop failure in rainfed cropping systems.

Southern Africa has diverse ecosystems. Scholes and Biggs (2004) identified seven main ecosystems (biomes) in the region, the savanna being the dominant ecosystem (Table 2.2).



Table 2.2: The main ecosystems of southern Africa

				Area (1000km <sup>2</sup> )	
Ecosystem (biome)	Sub-biome	Soil/geology	Pre- colonial	Area remaining untransformed by cultivation by year 2000	Percentage (%) remaining untransformed by cultivation by year 2000
Forest	Lowland forest	Generally infertile	1815	1693	93
	Montane forest	Fertile, but steep	190	149	78
Savanna	Miombo	Infertile, sandy	3558	3217	90
	Mopane	Fertile and loamy	605	469	77
	Acacia	Fertile, loamy & clayey	1785	1504	84
Grassland	Montane grasslands	Fertile or infertile	434	298	69
Arid shrubland	Non-succulent	Fertile often calcareous	671	663	99
	Succulent	Often very stony	103	102	100
Desert	Namib	Sandy or gravelly	126	126	100
Fynbos	Fynbos	Generally infertile	78	68	87
Wetland	Permanent wetland	Organic (peaty)	172	153	89
	Seasonal (dambo, <i>vlei</i> )	Often cracking clays (turf)	990	885	89
	Estuaries & mangroves	Saline, mangroves	23	22	95
	Salt pans		40	38	95
	Inland water and coastal waterways		197	197	100

Source: Scholes and Biggs (2004)

#### 2.2.2 Demographic and socio-economic characteristics

Approximately 14 million people reside in the Limpopo basin. The basin is predominantly rural, with almost 57% (8 million) of its population residing in rural areas. Although South Africa has the highest number of people living in the basin, in comparison Botswana has the highest proportion of its population residing in the basin. The population density, over much of the basin, is less than five people per km<sup>2</sup> (Mgonja *et al.*, 2006). Population density is highest in high rainfall areas and in large urban and industrial areas.

Table 2.3: Selected population statistics for the Limpopo basin

Riparian country	Total population of country in 1998 (million)	Population residing in basin (million)	Percentage of country's population in basin
South Africa	42.1	10.7	25
Mozambique	16.5	1.3	8
Botswana	1.6	1.0	63
Zimbabwe	11.4	1.0	9
Total	71.6	14.0	

Source: FAO (2004)

Most of the people living in the basin rely mainly on agriculture (i.e. crop and livestock production) for their livelihood. Non-farm sectors such as mining are also important sources of livelihood, particularly in areas with significant industrial and urban developments. However, low levels of education and skills among the majority of the rural population limit their opportunities for employment in non-farm sectors.

Agricultural production in the Limpopo basin is predominantly rainfed. Maize, which is the staple crop in the basin countries, is produced largely under rainfed conditions. Consequently, production varies from year to year due to annual rainfall variability. Although there is surplus maize available at the basin level, household food insecurity is a major problem in most rural areas in the basin due to low agricultural productivity, which is a result of several factors: frequent droughts; land degradation; low use of fertilisers and improved crop varieties; limited access to markets; limited irrigation; and limited agricultural knowledge (FAO, 2004; Mgonja *et al.*, 2006).



In terms of the standard of human well-being, the Human Development Index (a composite index of human welfare, which includes health, education and income dimensions of human welfare) for the basin countries ranges from 0.35-0.7, which indicates that the level of human well-being in the basin is quite low (UNDP, 2003). It is estimated that 57% of the basin's population is below the poverty line (Amaral and Sommerhalder, 2004). The increasing level of poverty is partly due to declining supply of ecosystem services (Scholes and Biggs, 2004).

#### 2.3 Characterisation of wetland ecosystems

#### 2.3.1 Definition of wetlands

The term 'wetland' has been defined in many ways. The difficulty in defining wetlands arises partly because of their highly dynamic character and the difficulties in defining their boundaries (Turner *et al.*, 2000).

The Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) of USA defines wetlands as 'areas where water covers the soil and is present either at or near the surface of the soil all year or for varying periods of time during the year'. They define two broad categories of wetlands: coastal and inland wetlands (EPA, 2004).

The United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) defines wetlands as 'lands transitional between terrestrial and aquatic systems where the water table is usually at or near the surface or the land is covered by shallow water' (Cowardin *et al.*, 1979). According to this definition wetlands must have one or more of the following three attributes:

- (i) at least periodically, the land must predominantly support hydrophytes;
- (ii) the substrate must consist of predominantly undrained soil; and
- (iii) the substrate must be non-soil and be saturated with water or covered by shallow water at some time of the growing season each year.

In southern Africa, wetlands are defined differently across the region, thus showing the different perceptions people have of wetlands in this region. For instance, in South Africa wetlands are loosely defined as places where marine, aquatic and terrestrial



ecosystems meet and interact. Whereas in Zimbabwe wetlands are understood to be lands that are subjected to permanent or seasonal flooding or areas of subsurface water accumulation through seepage such as *vleis* or dambos (Hirji *et al.*, 2000).

The most widely accepted definition is that proposed under the Ramsar Convention (1971) which defines wetlands as 'areas of marsh, fen, peatland or water, whether natural or artificial, permanent or temporary, with water that is static or flowing, fresh, brackish or salt including areas of marine water the depth of which at low tide does not exceed six meters' (Ramsar Convention, Article 1.1) (Ramsar Convention Secretariat, 1971).

What is evident from the above definitions is that the term 'wetland' covers a wide range of habitats that share a number of common features, the most important of which is continuous, seasonal or periodic standing of water or saturated soils with characteristic fauna and flora (Finlayson and Van der Valk, 1995).

#### 2.3.2 Types of wetland ecosystems

Wetlands vary in type and size. Southern Africa's wetlands are among the most diverse, both physically and biologically, of any other in the world (Taylor *et al.*, 1995). Wetlands differ in habitat or in their physical features, such as depth of water, perennial flow and types of vegetation. However, very little work has been done to systematically characterise and classify wetland ecosystems in the region. Yet, this kind of information is necessary for wetland conservation and management (Finlayson and Van der Valk, 1995).

A number of wetland classifications exist in literature. Just as some disagreements exist on the definition of wetlands so too is there no universally agreed classification system of wetlands. This is partly attributed to the fact that wetlands occupy an intermediate position between truly terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems and therefore encompass a diverse array of habitats (Finlayson and Van der Valk, 1995). One classification system categorises wetlands by their: geographical location; water quality; and mode of formation. This has given rise to classifications such as: intertidal and sub-tidal marine systems; lakes (artificial and natural); riverine systems;



floodplains; swamps; marshes; and dambos. Dugan (1990) classified wetland systems into three main categories, based on the quality of water and the mode of formation, namely: saltwater wetlands; freshwater wetlands; and artificial wetlands.

Roggeri (1995) classified wetlands according to geomorphological units (the main sources of water and nutrients) and ecological units (in particular vegetation). The geomorphological units distinguish four parts: alluvial lowlands; small valleys; lakeshores; and depressions. In addition to this, three ecological units were specified: periodically flooded ecosystems; swamps and marshes; and permanent shallow lakes and water bodies.

The most comprehensive and widely applauded wetland classification system is that developed by Cowardin *et al.* (1979). This classification is hierarchical and includes several layers of detail for wetlands including: a subsystem of water flow; classes of substrate types; subclasses of vegetation types; and dominant species. It classifies wetlands into five major categories based on hydrologic, geomorphic, chemical and biological features, which are: marine; estuarine; lacustrine; riverine and palustrine.

Breen *et al.* (1997) classified the main wetland systems in southern Africa based on the Cowardin *et al.* (1979) classification system and identified six main wetland classes: marine; estuarine; lacustrine; riverine; palustrine; and endorheic systems. The main features of these wetland classes are discussed below.

#### 2.3.2.1 Marine systems

Marine systems consist of the open ocean overlying the continental shelf and its associated coastline. They are exposed to the waves and currents of the open ocean and their water regimes are determined primarily by the ebb and flow of oceanic currents. In southern Africa, the marine system also includes the coastline of the Indian and Atlantic oceans that is characterised by coral reefs, seagrass beds and intertidal areas. These systems are poorly understood and their potential has not been fully investigated (Breen *et al.*, 1997).





#### 2.3.2.2 Estuarine systems

These systems include tidal wetlands which are usually semi-enclosed by land but have open, partially obstructed or sporadic access to the open ocean and in which water is at least occasionally diluted by freshwater run-off from the land. Estuarine systems are subdivided into sub-tidal areas, which are continually submerged, and intertidal areas, which are exposed and flooded by tides. The intertidal zone may include a variety of habitats such as lagoons, mud flats, marshes and mangroves. These systems are regarded as some of the most productive ecosystems in the world and are major breeding and feeding sites for fish and invertebrates.

#### 2.3.2.3 Lacustrine systems

These systems are areas of permanent water with little flow. Their main characteristic features are that: they are situated in topographic depressions or dammed river channels; they lack trees, shrubs, persistent emergent mosses or lichens with more than 30% area coverage; their total area exceeds eight hectares (Cowardin *et al.*, 1979). These systems include natural or constructed dams and lakes. Pans, which are categorised under lakes by other scholars, are sometimes classified under lacustrine systems (Cowan and Van Riet 1998). However, pans are slightly different from lakes in that pans have a water depth of less than three metres and dry up during the dry season, whereas lakes are more permanent in nature, larger in size, have a greater water depth and support a wider variety of fauna and flora (Richards, 2001). In southern Africa, lacustrine systems are mostly used for hydroelectric power and irrigated agriculture. However, they are threatened by pollution due to the disposal of industrial pollutants and siltation.

#### 2.3.2.4 Palustrine systems

Palustrine systems can be described as transition zones between terrestrial and aquatic systems. These systems include freshwater habitats with a wide range of physical, water regime and vegetation characteristics. These include: permanent or seasonal marshes and swamps; peatlands and fens; springs; and headwater wetlands. These systems are the most widespread wetland systems in southern Africa (see Table 2.2). Of the different types of palustrine systems seasonal wetlands or dambos (*vleis*) are



the most widespread. These wetland systems are extensively used for crop production and livestock grazing. Palustrine systems also include marshes and swamps which are typically dominated by reeds (*Phragmites sp.*) and papyrus (*Cyperus papyrus*) which are of importance to the livelihoods of many rural communities in southern Africa. Floodplain wetlands, which are areas of periodic flooding, situated between the river channel and valley sides, fall under this category. They are extensively used for agriculture, fisheries and wildlife.

#### 2.3.2.5 Riverine systems

Riverine wetlands are composed of small, localised floodplains and swamps, which occur along river channels. These wetland systems are valuable sources of fish and are also used for agriculture. Riverine systems also play a key role in hydrological regulation (Dini *et al.*, 1998).

#### 2.3.2.6 Endorheic systems

These are commonly referred to as pans in South Africa and as small closed basins or playas in geomorphological literature. The endorheic system has been added to Cowardin's original five categories of wetland systems in recognition of the significant ecological role played by pan ecosystems in southern Africa (Hirji *et al.*, 2000). Being located largely in dry regions, pans display characteristic patterns of ephemeral and irregular inundation.

Table 2.4 presents examples of wetland systems in the southern Africa region under each wetland category.



Table 2.4: Examples of major wetland types in southern Africa and the main services they provide

Wetland type	Major examples of wetlands in the region	Country	Main services it provides
Palustine wetlands (Floodplains)	Barotse floodplain	Zambia	Wildlife, fisheries, livestock grazing, water supply and cultural heritage
	Okavango delta	Botswana	Wildlife, agriculture, grazing, water extraction, fisheries and tourism
Riverine wetlands	Zambezi river	Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Malawi, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe	Wildlife, fisheries, hydropower, water supply, navigation and tourism
	Limpopo river	Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe and Mozambique	Wildlife, water supply, agriculture and irrigation
Lacustrine wetlands	Lake Kariba	Zambia and Zimbabwe	Hydroelectric power, wildlife, agriculture, fisheries and tourism
	Lake Chilwa	Malawi and Mozambique	Fisheries
Estuarine delta	Zambezi delta	Mozambique	Fisheries, agriculture, wildlife and waterfowl habitat
	Limpopo/Inkomati	Mozambique	Wildlife, fisheries, agriculture, tourism and forestry
Endorheic wetlands(Pans)	Cahora Bassa lake	Mozambique	Hydroelectric power and fisheries
	Makgadikgadi Pan	Botswana	Mining, wildlife, tourism and grazing

Source: Breen et al. (1997); Hirji et al. (2000)

#### 2.3.3 The distribution of wetlands

It is estimated that 6% of the world's land area consists of wetlands (Mitsch and Gosselink, 2000). The MEA (2005) estimated the global extent of wetlands to be in excess of 1,280 million hectares, although it is well-known that this is underestimated. However, the estimates of the extent of wetlands globally and in Africa differ significantly across studies due to the different definitions of wetlands and methods



used for delineating wetlands (Finlayson *et al.*, 1999). Table 2.5 presents estimates of wetland areas by Ramsar region.

Table 2.5: Estimates of global wetland areas by Ramsar region

Region	Region 1999 Global Review of Wetland resources (million hectares) 2004 Glob Wetland (million (Lehner and	
Africa	121-125	131
Asia	204	286
Europe	258	26
Neotropics	415	159
North America	242	287
Oceania	36	28
Total area	1276-1280	917

Source: MEA (2005)

Despite the widespread distribution of wetlands across Africa, knowledge on the extent of African wetlands is far from complete and is inadequate to support management needs (Taylor *et al.*, 1995; Finlayson *et al.*,1999). Due to lack of scientific investigation and a single classification system, as well as inconsistent mapping policies, an exact estimate of the total extent of wetlands in Africa is unknown (Schuyt, 2005). However, it is estimated that 1% of the land surface in Africa is covered by wetlands (Schuyt, 2002). In sub-Saharan Africa, wetlands constitute approximately 4.7% of the land surface and this figure increases to 6% with the inclusion of lakes, rivers and reservoirs (Rebelo *et al.*, 2009). Most of the wetlands occur within the major river basins in the region (Figure 2.2). Swamps and floodplains are the most widespread type of wetlands in Africa occurring mostly in central, eastern and southern Africa.

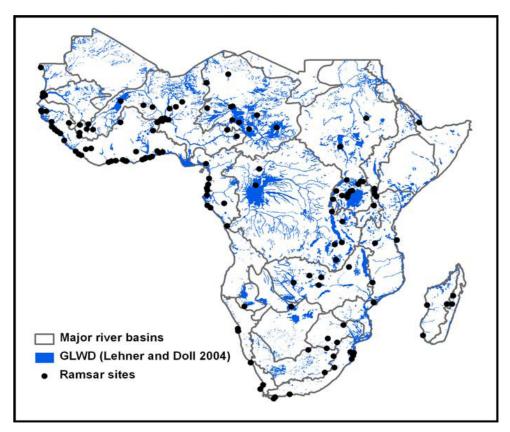


Figure 2.2: Wetland distribution and location of Ramsar sites across major river basins in Sub-Saharan Africa (Rebelo *et al.*, 2009)

In southern Africa, wetland ecosystems were identified as one of the eight main ecosystems in the region (Scholes and Biggs, 2004). However, quantitative data on the extent of wetlands in the region is limited due to lack comprehensive national wetland inventories characterising and classifying wetlands in a systematic manner (Taylor *et al.*, 1995; Frenken and Mharapara, 2002). In addition, as is the case at the global and continental levels, the figures on the total extent of wetlands in the region also differ significantly across studies due to different definitions of wetlands and delineation methods.

Within the Limpopo basin, it is estimated that 3% of the total land area is made up of wetlands (World Resources Institute, 2003). Table 2.6 presents estimates of area under wetlands in each of the riparian countries of the Limpopo basin from different sources.



Table 2.6: Estimates of wetland area (in km<sup>2</sup>) in Limpopo basin countries

Country	Taylor <i>et al.</i> (1995)	Stevenson and Frazier (1999)	Country area	Percentage of wetland
Botswana	28,310	-	569,582	5
Mozambique	24,122	25, 632	799,380	3
South Africa	4,600	7,545	1,219,090	<1
Zimbabwe	12,800	16,832	390,310	3-4

Some of the wetland systems in the region are listed as being of international importance under the Ramsar Convention on Wetlands (Ramsar Convention, 1971). The Ramsar Convention is an intergovernmental treaty that provides a framework for national action and international cooperation for the wise use of wetlands. Six of the countries in southern Africa are parties to the Ramsar Convention: Botswana; Malawi; Namibia; South Africa; Tanzania; and Zambia. Some of the obligations of the parties to the Convention are to designate some wetland sites to the Ramsar list of wetlands of international importance and to promote the conservation and wise use of wetlands (Ramsar Convention Secretariat, 2004). The criteria for designating wetlands to the Ramsar list include: the uniqueness of the wetland system; its role in supporting populations of endangered species; and its role in supporting waterfowl populations.

Several wetland sites in southern Africa are designated Ramsar sites. Examples include the Okavango delta (Botswana), Lake Chilwa (Malawi), the St Lucia system (South Africa) and the Kafue Flats (Zambia). These wetland systems have socioeconomic importance to the communities living around them and the countries in which they are found. Although some of the region's most significant wetland systems are not listed as Ramsar sites, this does not mean that they are not important. Indeed in many arid areas in the region, any wetland system of any size is of significant socio-economic importance to the local people (Hirji *et al.*, 2000).

#### 2.4 The importance of wetlands for human well-being

The fact that wetlands support human well-being through its provision of services is well-known. This was confirmed in the MEA (2005) to the Ramsar Convention, entitled: 'Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Wetlands and Water synthesis.' The



linkages between wetland services and human well-being are shown in Figure 2.3. In southern Africa, the linkages between ecosystems and human well-being are stronger in poor rural communities, whose lives are directly affected by the availability of ecosystem products such as food, medicinal plants and firewood (Scholes and Biggs, 2004).

The services that wetlands provide can be classified into: provisioning; regulating; cultural; and supporting services (Turner *et al.*, 2000; De Groot *et al.*, 2002; Hein *et al.*, 2006; MEA, 2005). Provisioning services are tangible products people obtain from wetlands such as: food; fibre; water; and genetic resources. Regulating services are benefits obtained through the role of wetlands in the regulation of ecosystem processes such as: water purification; climate regulation; and erosion control. Cultural services are non-material benefits people derive from wetlands through: spiritual enrichment; cognitive development; and recreational, educational and aesthetic values. Supporting services are those services that are necessary for the production of all other ecosystem services such as: soil formation; nutrient cycling; and biodiversity. Table 2.7 shows examples of services provided by wetlands under each of these categories.

It is worth noting that a wetland system may not provide the full range of services listed in the table. This is because the services that a particular wetland provides are determined by its characteristics and most fundamentally by specific factors such as size, climate, geology and topography. The services provided by wetlands contribute to human well-being in many ways (Barbier *et al.*, 1997; MEA, 2005). It is well-known that the provisioning services from wetlands are strongly linked to the access of basic materials for the 'good life' dimension of human well-being (MEA, 2005). The regulating functions of wetlands also affect human well-being in multiple ways. For instance, water purification, flood attenuation and climate regulation functions affect the health, security and other components of human well-being. Supporting services are critical for sustaining vital ecosystem functions that deliver many benefits to people. In addition to these services, wetlands have significant aesthetic, educational, cultural and spiritual values and provide invaluable opportunities for recreation and tourism, thereby influencing the social relations aspect of human well-being.

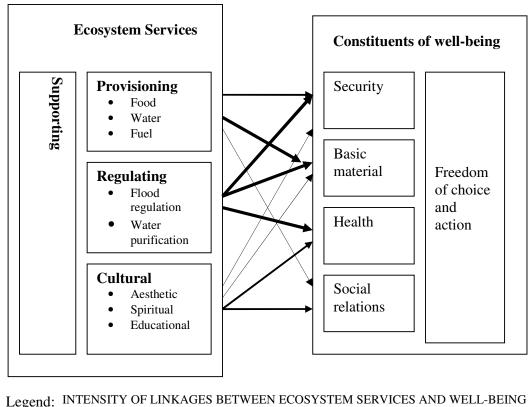


Table 2.7: Ecosystem services provided by or derived from wetlands

Service	Examples
Provisioning	
Food	Production of fish, wild game, fruits and crops
Fibre and fuel	Production of fuelwood, fodder, building and craft materials
Fresh water	Storage and retention of water for domestic, industrial and agricultural use
Biochemical	Extraction of medicines and other materials from biota
Genetic materials	Genes for resistance to plant pathogens, ornamental species
Regulating	
Climate regulation	Source of and sink for greenhouse gases, influence local and regional temperatures and precipitation
Water regulation	Groundwater recharge and discharge
Water purification	Retention, recovery and removal of pollutants
Erosion control	Retention of soils and sediments
Natural hazard regulation	Flood control and storm protection
Pollination	Habitat for pollinators
Cultural	
Spiritual and inspirational	Source of inspiration, spiritual and religious value
Recreational	Opportunities for recreational activities
Aesthetic	Many people find beauty and aesthetic value in wetland ecosystems
Educational	Opportunities for formal education and training
Supporting	
Soil formation	Sediment retention and accumulation of organic matter
Nutrient cycling	Storage, recycling and processing of nutrients
C MEA (2005)	<u> </u>

Source: MEA (2005)





Weak Medium Strong

Figure 2.3: Linkages between wetland services and human well-being (MEA, 2005)

In southern Africa, many communities depend on wetlands for multiple values, including social, economic, ecological and aesthetic values (Breen *et al.*, 1997; Hirji *et al.*, 2000). As much of the region experiences semi-arid to arid climate conditions, many people rely on wetlands for agricultural production due to their ability to retain water throughout the year and for their fertile soils (Chabwela, 1991; Frenken and Mharapara, 2002; Breen *et al.*, 1997). Wetland cultivation provides a coping mechanism by which communities mitigate crop yield losses that are associated with low rainfall and frequent droughts.

Besides agriculture, wetlands provide other provisioning services upon which a significant proportion of the rural population in the region depends. These include: dry season livestock grazing and watering; fisheries; wildlife; wetland plants (papyrus, reeds, sedges, edible plants, medicinal plants and thatching grass); clay for



pottery; as well as water supply for domestic, irrigation and industrial uses (Breen *et al.*, 1997).

Several studies quantified the economic contribution of wetland systems in southern Africa to human welfare. However, it is worth noting that most of these studies were carried out at local scales rather than at national and regional scales due to limited data on the actual extent of wetlands at national and regional levels. In addition, most of the valuation studies focused on quantifying a few key services due to the difficulty in quantifying some of the wetland services given the data and resource limitations. For example, Seyam *et al.* (2001) used a simple approach that takes into account the common problems with data limitations and estimated that the total use value of approximately 3 million hectares of wetlands in the Zambezi basin was about \$145 million (USD) per year, which was equivalent to 4.7% of Zambia's GDP in 1990. Adekola (2007) estimated that the direct use value of the main provisioning services of the Ga-Mampa wetland, which covers an area of 120 hectares, is \$90 000 (USD) per year (2005/2006 values).

Table 2.8 shows the net financial values per user household for selected wetland services in selected wetland systems in the region, including the study area. These net financial values deduct variable costs, but do not take into account labour costs. As most of the rural households rely on family labour for most wetland activities, deducting the opportunity costs of labour in environments of mostly low earning skills and limited labour opportunities is perhaps not a good idea.

The figures presented show that the net financial value per user household for wetland services varies from one wetland system to another, which confirms that the extent to which wetlands provide services and the contribution of wetland services to human well-being vary depending on the characteristics of the wetland. In some cases a service (or services) that is provided by one wetland system is absent in another wetland system.





Table 2.8: Net financial values per user household of selected services for selected wetland systems in southern Africa

Wetland service	Chobe and Caprivi wetlands, Namibia US\$/user household/year	Barotse Floodplain, Zambia US\$/user household/year	Lower Shire wetlands, Malawi US\$/ user household/year	Ga-Mampa wetland, South Africa US\$/user household/year
Crop production	205	85	310	1072
Livestock grazing	485	256	169	-
Fish production	299	325	56	12
Reeds collection	39	6	7	93
Sedge and papyrus collection	42	5	32	88

Source: Turpie *et al.* (1999); Adekola (2007)

Some wetland systems in the region have important recreational, aesthetic and spiritual values. Aesthetic value is reflected, for example, in the tradition of some tribes to have initiation rites in wetland areas. The abundant wildlife and scenic beauty offered by wetland ecosystems form the backbone of the tourism industry in the region (Hirji *et al.*, 2000). Examples of wetlands in southern Africa that are important for tourism are the Okavango delta, Etosha pans and St Lucia to name a few. Apart from supporting nature-based tourism, some wetlands are used for a variety of recreational activities such as: sport hunting; fishing; bird watching; swimming; and sailing.

#### 2.5 Major threats to wetland ecosystems in southern Africa

Globally, wetlands continue to be degraded and lost at an increasing rate (Moser *et al.*, 1996; MEA, 2005; Ramsar Conservation Bureau, 1997). It is estimated that more than half of the wetlands in the world may have been lost since the start of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, with the greatest loss found in developed countries, while dramatic losses have occurred over a short space of time in developing countries (Barbier, 1993).



Southern Africa is no exception to this global trend (Taylor *et al.*, 1995; Breen *et al.*, 1997). However, data on wetland losses and conversion rates for the region are scanty and hard to compare as different sources provide very different estimates of wetland areas. In some cases the data is not available due to the lack of capacity in many countries to undertake wetland inventory studies (Taylor *et al.*, 1995).

The few studies, which were conducted in the region, show that the rate of wetland degradation and loss is quite high. For example, in South Africa, Kotze *et al.* (1995) estimated that more than 50% of the wetland area had been lost countrywide. In a review of wetland inventories in southern Africa, Taylor *et al.* (1995) reported wetland losses in two areas in Natal, South Africa: the Tugela basin, where over 90% of the wetland area has been lost in parts of the basin; and the Mfolozi catchment, where 58% of the original wetland area had been lost.

The loss of wetlands disproportionately affects the well-being of poor people who depend on wetland services for their livelihoods. It is therefore important that wetlands are sustainably managed so that they continue to provide services in future. This is in line with the call by the Ramsar Convention (1971) on the 'wise use' and 'sustainable development' of wetlands. They define wise use as the sustainable utilisation of wetlands for the benefit of mankind in a way compatible with maintenance of the wetland ecological security.

The major threats to wetlands can be classified into direct and indirect drivers (MEA, 2005). Direct drivers are factors that directly affect wetland ecosystem processes. Indirect drivers are those factors that trigger one or more direct drivers. Moser *et al.* (1996) refer to direct drivers as proximate causes of wetland loss and degradation and the indirect drivers as underlying causes. Furthermore, the analysis of the threats to wetlands can be considered at two levels: the direct loss and degradation that occurs to the wetland itself; and the indirect loss and degradation which occur as a result of changes outside (upstream) of the wetland system.

The primary direct drivers of wetland degradation and loss are: infrastructure development (dams, dykes, irrigation, canals and mining); land use or cover due to conversion to agriculture or other uses; wetland drainage and filling; introduction of

invasive alien species; overharvesting and overexploitation of wetland products (fish, wildlife and wild plants); water abstraction; water pollution (from sewage discharge, pesticides and sediments); and more recently, climate change (MEA, 2005). Conversion of wetlands to agriculture is the principal cause of wetland loss worldwide. It is estimated that by 1985, 2% of the wetlands in Africa had been converted to agriculture (MEA, 2005).

Socio-economic and political factors are the principal indirect drivers to the loss of wetlands (Kotze *et al.*, 1995; Moser *et al.*, 1996). These include: population growth; rising poverty and economic inequality; food insecurity; and other socio-economic factors including policy intervention failures, due to inconsistencies among government policies in different departments and institutional failures, related to institutions that govern wetland resources management (MEA, 2005). For example, in the studied wetland system, access and use of wetland resources for both agriculture and natural products is influenced by the interplay between:

- local level institutions (traditional leaders, the wetland committee and the Community Development Forum);
- civil society organisations (non-governmental organisations working on wetlands such as the Mondi Wetlands Project); and
- national level institutions (Department of Agriculture, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Department of Land Affairs and the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism) (Tinguery, 2006).

In southern Africa, the main underlying factors causing the loss of wetlands are: population growth; rising poverty; severe economic stress; and frequent droughts (Matiza and Chabwela, 1992). Barbier *et al.* (1997), Turner *et al.* (2000) and Schuyt (2005) noted that the underlying causes of wetland degradation and loss are:

- (i) lack of understanding of wetland values and the impact of human activities on wetland functioning;
- (ii) market failures associated with the character of externalities of many wetland services and the uneven distribution of their benefits across stakeholder groups; and
- (iii) policy intervention failures.



Table 2.9 shows the main threats to wetlands in southern Africa.

Table 2.9: Major threats to wetlands in southern Africa ranked according to extent of occurrence

Threat	Rank	Areas at risk	
Dams	1	All dam areas especially the Lower Zambezi	
Irrigation	1	Most river basins and floodplains in the region	
Vegetation clearing	1	Most parts of southern Africa	
(conversion to agriculture)			
Overgrazing	1	Most parts of southern Africa	
Over-hunting (Poaching)	1	Largely in Zambia, Angola, Tanzania and	
		Mozambique	
Overfishing	1	Most rivers, small lakes and floodplains	
Over- extraction of water	1	Potentially Zambezi river and Okavango Delta	
resource			
Population growth and human	2	Coastal zone of Mozambique and dambos of	
settlements		Zimbabwe	
Siltation (infilling)	2	Luangwa and Save rivers	
Pollution (pesticides)	2	Common in all parts of the region	
Pollution (agro-chemicals)	2	Common in all parts	
Pollution (industrial)	3	Urban areas and mining sites	
Eutrophication	3	Lake Chivero (Zimbabwe) and Kafubu	
		(Zambia)	

Legend: 1=A widespread problem seriously disrupting ecological and hydrological processes;

2=Causing serious damage, but is not yet widespread; 3=Present, but not yet widespread

Source: Breen et al. (1997)

#### 2.6 Concluding Summary

This chapter briefly presented the biophysical and socio-economic characteristics of the region under study. The chapter also reviewed the major ecosystems in southern Africa and showed that wetlands are one of the eight major ecosystem types occurring in the region. Wetlands provide multiple services, which are important to the livelihoods of many rural communities in the region. The services range from agricultural production, natural products, dry season livestock grazing, water supply, fisheries and other aesthetic and cultural values. The services wetlands provide vary from one wetland to another depending on the biophysical characteristics of each wetland.



Despite their role in supporting people's livelihoods wetlands continue to be degraded and lost at an increasing rate. The major threats to wetlands in the region are conversion to agriculture and overexploitation of wetland products driven primarily by the increasing demand for wetland services due to population growth, increasing poverty levels and other socio-economic factors. Given the key role wetlands play in supporting the welfare of the rural poor in the region it is critical that they are sustainably managed so that they continue to provide services in future.



#### **CHAPTER 3**

# ANALYTICAL FRAMEWORK FOR RURAL HOUSEHOLDS RESOURCE ALLOCATION DECISIONS AMONG COMPETING LIVELIHOOD ACTIVITIES

#### 3.1 Introduction

Agricultural households in developing countries depend on farm, off-farm and natural resource activities for their livelihoods. These activities compete for household resources and households have to make decisions on how to allocate their resources among these activities. In this chapter, an analytical framework is developed for analysing the factors that influence household resource allocation and supply decisions for competing livelihood activities, including wetland activities in the context of a household labour resource allocation problem. The chapter is divided into three main sections. The first section reviews the empirical literature on the factors that influence rural household labour allocation decisions for competing livelihood activities, including natural resource use activities. The second section presents the analytical household model, derives optimality conditions and discusses the analytical results. The final section gives a concluding summary of the chapter.

# 3.2 Review of selected literature on the determinants of rural household labour allocation decisions for competing livelihood activities

There is widespread acknowledgement that the extent to which rural households incorporate natural resources into their livelihood activities varies considerably across different households. Similarly, the manner in which households allocate their resources among livelihood activities is different.

Many empirical studies have examined the socio-economic factors, which influence rural household decisions on the use of natural resources, in the context of a labour resource allocation problem. Most of these studies used agricultural household models as the analytical framework for analysing labour allocation decisions made by rural



households. The reduced form approach is then used as the basis for empirical estimation of the factors influencing labour allocation and production decisions. However, three different approaches are used for empirical estimation of the reduced form functions. These approaches are: single equation estimation approaches (e.g. Tobit models and ordinary least-squares regression models); two-stage estimation techniques; and system estimation approaches. The first approach applies single equation econometric approaches to estimate the individual reduced form or structural equations, mainly using ordinary least-squares methods. Two-stage (or three-stage) least-squares methods are appropriate where there is need to take into account endogeneity, because single equation ordinary least-squares methods yield biased estimates. Lastly, system estimation approaches jointly estimate equations as a system taking into account across-equation error correlations, yielding unbiased and efficient estimates where such error correlations exist. Selected studies, which applied these approaches in analysing household resource allocation decisions and supply decisions, are reviewed below.

Chen et al. (2006) developed a household labour allocation model to analyse the factors that determine the choice of energy and labour allocation for fuelwood collection in rural China. The household model captures a situation in which a household allocates labour across crop production, off-farm work, fuelwood collection and leisure. The empirical model consisted of three reduced form equations for the quantity of fuelwood collected, the time spent collecting fuelwood and the quantity of coal consumed. The explanatory variables used in the three equations are: stove ownership; household characteristics (household size, share of adults, education of household members and household wealth); distance from the forest; total cultivated area; household exogenous income; and village dummies to capture price differences of agricultural goods, marketed goods, coal and off-farm wage rates. A Tobit model is used for empirical estimation of the reduced form equations. The results of the study showed that education and wealth play a role in explaining fuelwood collection and the time input into it. Both education and wealth were found to be negatively related to fuelwood collection. The negative relationship between wealth and fuelwood collection is consistent with the findings of Shackleton and Shackleton (2006), who found for a rural area in South Africa that fuelwood consumption significantly decreases with a household's wealth status although this



was not always true for other non-timber forest products (NTFP). Based on their findings Chen *et al.* (2006) concluded that the promotion of alternative energy sources, the investment in rural infrastructure and policies to stimulate basic education in rural areas can reduce pressure on forest resources.

Dayal (2006) developed a household model that captures the interrelationships between grazing, crop production and fuelwood collection to examine the factors that influence decisions on the levels of extraction of forest biomass by rural households in India. The household model, developed in this study, added the complementary aspects between activities by assuming that rural households can collect fuelwood by: spending labour time for fuelwood collection only; collecting fuelwood while grazing; and/or collecting fuelwood while spending time on crop production. In addition, the model captures the fact that agricultural residues can be used as an energy source and as livestock feed. Also dung is used as a source of energy and as fertilizer in crop production. The empirical model is based on the reduced form equations related to the levels of biomass extracted as functions of exogenous variables. The regressors include household characteristics, such as: household size: quantity of males; social order; wealth (type of house); number of cattle; number of goats; land area; and village dummies. A Tobit model was used for empirical estimation. The study found that location, ownership of biogas and social order are significant factors influencing the levels of extraction of forest biomass. Based on the results, it was concluded that installing biogas plants can potentially reduce pressure on forest biomass.

Heltberg *et al.* (2000) used a non-separable household model to study the links between forest scarcity and household energy consumption. The model focuses on the substitution of fuelwood and other domestic energy sources including crop residues, animal dung and biogas for rural households in Rajasthan, India. They developed a household model to capture household labour allocation to agriculture (crop and livestock production), off-farm work and fuelwood collection. Three reduced form equations showing the amount of fuelwood that was collected, the amount of labour and time spent on colleting and the private energy consumption (animal dung, crop residues and wood from own farm) as functions of all exogenous variables, were estimated empirically using the maximum entropy approach. The study observed that fuelwood collection time, household endowments of land, labour, livestock and trees



and village-level indicators of forest stock and access are significant in explaining fuel mix at household level. It concluded that rural households respond to forest scarcity and increased fuelwood collection time by substituting fuels from private sources for forest fuelwood.

A number of studies have used two-stage estimation techniques for empirical estimation. For example, Matshe and Young (2004) developed a household model to analyse off-farm labour allocation decisions of rural households in Zimbabwe. They used a double hurdle model to empirically model the joint decisions to participate in the off-farm labour market and the decision regarding the amount of labour time allocated to off-farm work. Their results showed that education, gender, asset holding, remittances and land holding influence household off-farm labour supply decisions among rural households. They found that education, access to productive assets and remittances are positively related to labour supply for off-farm work. The study concluded that females are less likely to engage in off-farm activities than males due to the various commitments to activities that women have within the household.

Adhikari (2002) constructed a household production model to explore the socio-economic factors influencing household labour allocation decisions for the collection and gathering of non-timber forest products (NTFP) in Nepal. The household model captures a household engaged in crop and livestock production as well as NTFP collection activities. The production functions for firewood, fodder, cut grass and leaf litter were specified as Cobb-Douglas functions and estimated as log-linear functions using two-stage least-squares method to capture the potential endogeneity of labour used in the production of the different forest products. The explanatory variables included in the production functions consist of: labour time allocated to the collection of forest products; household demographic variables (ethnicity, sex, education and household size); ownership of tools; labour time spent on activities; membership to organisations; and household endowments (landholding size and livestock assets). The study concluded that poor households were facing limited access to community forestry and therefore were less dependent on forest resources than households who were relatively better off.



Jolliffe (2004) developed an agricultural household model to examine how education affects household allocation of labour between farm and off-farm activities and farm and off-farm profits in rural Ghana. To capture these effects, household utility was modelled as a function of leisure and the sum of farm and off-farm profits. The reduced form farm and off-farm labour supply and farm and off-farm profits equations were empirically estimated using a two-stage least-squares approach to capture the direct and indirect effect of education on labour allocation and farm and off-farm profitability. The two-stage estimation approach was adopted to capture the potential endogeneity of labour. The study concluded that off-farm work has a much higher return to education than farm work and increased education results in reallocation of labour from farm work to off-farm work and therefore increases off-farm profit. Fafchamps and Quisumbing (1998) found a similar result in a study in rural Pakistan.

Very few studies used the systems approach for empirical estimation. For example, Fisher *et al.* (2005) developed a household labour allocation model to examine the determinants of livelihood activity choices affecting forest use among rural households in Malawi. In their household model they assumed that households allocate family labour across three livelihood activities, namely: maize production; forest activities; and non-forest activities. The empirical model comprised of a system of three reduced form labour share equations. A system estimation approach similar to that used in commodity or factor demand systems used to estimate the labour share equations jointly using constrained maximum likelihood method assuming that the labour allocation decisions across activities are related. Explanatory variables included in the empirical model are: household characteristics (age and education of the head of the household); farm size; dependency ratio; shadow prices or wages of forest and non-forest activities; and the price of maize. Their study found that labour share that is allocated to forest activities is negatively related to the return to non-forest employment, secondary education of the household head and wealth.

Though there is a large body of empirical literature on the determinants of rural household labour allocation for competing livelihoods activities (including natural products), no study yet has analysed the factors determining household decisions on the use of wetland products in the context of an overall household labour allocation



problem. To date, existing studies which attempted to look at the factors influencing decisions on use of wetland resources mainly focused on relating household socioeconomic characteristics and the different type of uses of wetland resources using statistical and single equation econometric approaches, which are not based on a structural behavioural model of the rural household decision-making process. For example, Mulugeta *et al.* (2000) used a discriminant analysis to study the socioeconomic factors influencing the decision to cultivate wetlands in the Metu and Yayu-Hurumu Weredas of Illubabor zone in southwest Ethiopia. Using household survey data, their results showed that wetland cultivators: are less wealthy; are young; have large family sizes; own small landholdings; have less livestock; own few farm implements; and are food insecure.

Mulugeta (2004) applied a binomial logit model to assess the factors that influence the decision to cultivate wetlands in Kemise, Illubabor zone of south-western Ethiopia. The study found that wetland cultivators had large family sizes, with more male members and suffered less out-migration of family members in the preceding years in comparison to non-cultivators. Contrary to the findings of Mulugeta *et al.* (2000), this study found that wetland cultivators are wealthier households who have access to productive assets, earn more cash income, use more agricultural inputs and generally enjoy higher yields than non-wetland cultivators.

Chiputwa *et al.* (2006) used a series of binomial logit models to examine the factors influencing the decision to cultivate wetlands and collect wetland natural products in a wetland system situated in the southwestern part of Zimbabwe. Their results showed that wetland cultivation is positively and significantly related to irrigation plot ownership, income from non-agricultural activities and to the total land area, but is negatively related to the number of livestock. They also found that male-headed households are more likely to engage in wild fruit and reeds collection as well as cultural practices than their female counterparts. The education level of the head of a household significantly reduced the likelihood of a household engaging in sedge collections and the use of wetlands for cultural purposes.

Using household survey data from selected wetland sites in Tanzania, McCartney and Van Koppen (2004) used cross tabulations to analyse the relationship between

wetland uses and a household's wealth status. They found that poor households are more likely to use wetlands for the collection of reeds, sedges and domestic water than the medium ranked and rich households. Medium ranked households were more likely to use wetlands for cropping than the poor and rich households. However, their results showed that the proportion of a household's income derived from wetland cultivation is highest among the rich households compared to the poor and medium ranked households. This suggests that the rich households were more dependent on wetland cropping than the other two wealth classes. In addition, they found that wealthier households were more likely to use wetlands for livestock grazing than poor households.

Based on case studies of selected wetlands in Zambia, Masiyandima *et al.* (2004) found that poor households are more likely to engage in the collection of natural products and wetland cultivation than the wealthier households. However, in contrast to the findings by McCartney and Van Koppen (2004), their results showed that poor households obtain a significantly higher proportion of their household's income from wetland cultivation than the medium and wealthier households, suggesting that poor households were more dependent on wetland cultivation for their livelihood than the medium and wealthier households. The differences in findings could be attributed to the differences in biophysical and socio-economic conditions across sites.

As mentioned earlier, most of the empirical studies on wetlands to date have focused on assessing the factors that influence the type of uses of wetland products. While such analyses are important, it is essential for policy purposes to go a step further and analyse the factors which influence the level of dependence on wetland products (measured in terms of quantities of wetland products collected or the proportion of income derived from wetland products). This is because, as demonstrated by Narain *et al.* (2008), it is possible that those households that are less likely to participate in a natural resource use activity are actually more dependent (i.e. collect more quantities) if they engage in that use.

Few studies have attempted to look at the factors that influence households' decisions on the use of wetland products. For example, Turpie *et al.* (1999) used a simple bivariate analysis to compare the quantities of wetland natural products collected by

rural households of different wealth classes in selected wetlands in the Zambezi basin in southern Africa. They found evidence of decreasing levels of collection of wetland natural products (reeds, sedges, palm leaves and thatching grass) with an increase in wealth status in the Barotse floodplain wetlands (western Zambia) as well as the Lower Shire floodplain wetlands (in Malawi and Mozambique). However, in the Caprivi wetlands in Namibia and Zambia they found that wealthier households harvested more natural products than the poor, presumably because wealthier households are larger and therefore have a higher demand for resources and also have more labour resources to collect products. These findings show that the effect of wealth on the demands for wetland natural products is mixed and can vary across sites.

Kipkemboi *et al.* (2007) analysed the socio-economic factors that influence the dependence on wetland products by households in the Lake Victoria wetlands in Kenya using a multiple linear regression model. A household's dependence on wetland products was measured in terms of the quantity of wetland products collected. Independent variables included in the model are: household size; the age and education level of the respondents; gender; and access to wetlands. Their results showed that females are more dependent on wetland products than males; a finding they attributed to the fact that in rural areas women are more directly involved in household food provision and interact with the environment on a daily basis. They also found that poor and middle-income households are more dependent on wetlands for both cultivation and natural products, while wealthy households are less dependent on wetlands as they obtain significant non-farm income to meet household demands.

The empirical studies reviewed in this section generally confirm that household socioeconomic characteristics influence household labour allocation and production decisions among rural households. However, the factors influencing household resource allocation decisions and production decisions vary with local context and type of resources. To date, empirical studies, which attempted to examine factors influencing rural household decisions on use of wetland products, have used econometric approaches. These econometric approaches are not based on any structural behavioural model of rural household decision-making behaviours. The major contribution of this work is that the factors that influence rural household



decisions on the use of wetland products by formally modelling household resource use decision-making process based on a structural household model, which takes into account the fact that rural households engage in multiple livelihood activities, which compete for resources (e.g. labour, capital and land).

The above literature highlights the relevance of the agricultural household modelling approach in analysing rural household labour allocation, production and supply decisions in developing countries. As households in the study area both produce and consume wetland products and agricultural output (Adekola, 2007), the agricultural household modelling approach is most appropriate for analysing household labour allocation and supply decisions for wetland and agricultural products (Singh *et al.*, 1986; Chen *et al.*, 2006).

# 3.3 The Analytical Framework

The neoclassical model of a farm household (agricultural household model) described by Singh *et al.* (1986) has been the main analytical approach used for analysing resource allocation, production and consumption decisions made by rural households in developing countries. This approach is based on the observation that rural households in subsistence economies are joint producers and consumers. The households can separate production and consumption decisions by first maximising profit from food production and use the profits from production to maximise utility from consumption. The major difference between the farm household model and the pure consumption model is that in the latter the household budget is exogenously fixed whereas in the former it is influenced by production decisions that contribute to income through farm profits.

The author drew upon the neoclassical model of the farm household presented in Singh *et al.* (1986) to develop a model for analysing factors influencing household labour allocation and supply decisions. The model presented below captures the situation of a farm household engaged in crop production, livestock production, off-farm work and wetland product collection.



The model assumes that a representative household maximises its utility, which is dependent on: the consumption of a composite wetland product  $(X_H)$ ; agricultural grain  $(X_G)$ ; livestock product  $(X_N)$ ; market good  $(X_M)$ ; and leisure time  $(L_Z)$ . Household utility is assumed to vary with different household characteristics  $(\Omega)$ , including family size and the age of household members, which may influence household consumption preferences. For the sake of simplicity, it is assumed that the market good,  $X_M$ , is purchased from the market. Thus, the household utility maximisation problem is defined as:

Max U = U(
$$X_H, X_G, X_M, X_N, L_Z; \Omega$$
) (3.1)

The quantity of the wetland product consumed by the household  $(X_H)$  is equal to the wetland product harvested from the wetland by the household  $(X_H^H)$ , plus the quantity purchased from the market  $(X_H^P)$ , minus the quantity sold in the market  $(X_H^S)$ :

$$X_{H} = X_{H}^{H} + X_{H}^{P} - X_{H}^{S}$$
(3.2)

The production constraint of the wetland product describes harvesting of the wetland product as a function of household labour allocated to wetland products collection  $(L_H)$ , household characteristics  $(\Omega)$ , which influence the harvesting of wetland products (such as household size and education level of the household) and a vector of production technology parameters  $(\beta)$ :

$$X_{H}^{H} = X_{H}^{H}(L_{H}, \beta; \Omega)$$

$$(3.3)$$

The household also depends on grain production for its livelihood. The production technology for the agricultural grain  $(G_q)$  is: a function of household labour allocated to agricultural production  $(L_G)$ ; a vector of household asset endowments influencing grain production, such as land and farm implements (ploughs and hoes)  $(\omega)$ ; a composite input capturing all the inputs used in grain production, which are purchased



from the market, such as fertiliser and seeds ( $Y_G$ ); and the production technology parameter ( $\alpha$ ).

$$G_{a} = G_{a}(\alpha, L_{G} Y_{G}; \omega)$$
(3.4)

The household can purchase additional agricultural grain  $(G_q^p)$  from the market to meet any consumption requirements, which are not supplied by its own production. In addition, the household can sell surplus grain  $(G_q^s)$  in the market and hence faces a grain balance of:

$$X_G = G_q + G_q^p - G_q^s$$
 (3.5)

The household is also engaged in livestock activities that supply meat and milk products. The production of a composite livestock product  $(V_N)$  is: a function of labour time spent grazing animals  $(L_V)$ ; and other livestock inputs such as water (N) and production technology parameters  $(\theta)$ .

$$V_{N} = V_{N}(L_{V}, N, \theta) \tag{3.6}$$

As is the case with agricultural grain, livestock products can be bought and sold in the market. Thus, the amount of livestock products consumed  $(X_N)$  is equal to the amount produced by the household  $(V_N)$  plus the amount purchased from the market  $(V_N^P)$  minus the amount sold in the market  $(V_N^S)$ :

$$X_{N} = V_{N} + V_{N}^{P} - V_{N}^{S}$$
(3.7)

Household cash expenditures are constrained by the income from selling the agricultural grain, livestock product, wetland product, off-farm labour income and exogenous income (E). Exogenous income includes income in the form of pension, social grants and remittances. The household can spend income on purchasing wetland products, livestock products, agricultural grain, market goods and agricultural



inputs used in grain production. Farm inputs,  $Y_G$ , are bought but not sold. It is assumed that all market prices are exogenous. Cash expenditures cannot exceed the total cash income. Thus the household budget constraint is given by:

$$P_{H}X_{H}^{S} + P_{G}G_{q}^{S} + P_{V}V_{N}^{S} + L_{o}W_{o} + E \ge P_{M}X_{M} + P_{H}X_{H}^{P} + P_{G}G_{q}^{P} + P_{V}V_{N}^{P} + P_{Y}Y_{G} + P_{N}N$$
(3.8)

Where  $P_H$ ;  $P_G$ ;  $P_V$ ;  $P_M$ ;  $P_Y$ ;  $P_N$ ;  $W_o$ ; E refer to market prices of the wetland product, agricultural grain, livestock product, market good, inputs used in grain production, livestock inputs, exogenous off-farm wage rates and exogenous household income (non-wage income), respectively.  $L_o$  refers to the labour time spent on off-farm wage work.

Households have limited total labour time available ( $L_T$ ) and divide this time between wetland product collection, off-farm activities, grain production, livestock activities and leisure. Thus, household labour time constraint is given by:

$$L_{T} = L_{H} + L_{O} + L_{G} + L_{V} + L_{Z}$$
(3.9)

The decision problem for the subsistence farm household is to maximise the utility function (3.1) subject to production, budget and time constraints specified in 3.2 to 3.9 above. The Lagrangian for an internal solution to this problem is:

$$\begin{split} &\ell\!=\!U\!\!\left\{\!X_{\!{}_{M}},\!X_{\!{}_{H}},\!X_{\!{}_{G}},\!X_{\!{}_{N}},\!L_{\!Z};\!\Omega\!\right\}\!-\!\lambda_{\!{}_{\!1}}(X_{\!{}_{\!H}}^{\!H}\!-\!X_{\!{}_{\!H}}^{\!H}(L_{\!{}_{\!H}},\!\beta;\!\Omega))\!-\!\lambda_{\!{}_{\!2}}(G_{\!{}_{\!q}}\!-\!G_{\!{}_{\!q}}(\;\alpha,\!L_{\!{}_{\!G}}\,Y_{\!{}_{\!G}};\omega))\\ &-\!\lambda_{\!{}_{\!3}}(V_{\!{}_{\!N}}\!-\!V_{\!{}_{\!N}}\!(L_{\!{}_{\!V}},\!N,\!\theta))\!-\!\lambda_{\!{}_{\!4}}(P_{\!{}_{\!M}}\!X_{\!{}_{\!M}}\!+\!P_{\!{}_{\!H}}\!X_{\!{}_{\!H}}^{P}\!+\!P_{\!{}_{\!G}}\!G_{\!{}_{\!q}}^{P}\!+\!P_{\!{}_{\!V}}\!V_{\!{}_{\!N}}^{P}\!+\!P_{\!{}_{\!Y}}\!Y_{\!{}_{\!G}}\!+\!P_{\!{}_{\!N}}\!N\!-\!P_{\!{}_{\!H}}\!X_{\!{}_{\!H}}^{S}\\ &-\!P_{\!{}_{\!G}}\!G_{\!{}_{\!q}}^{s}\!-\!P_{\!{}_{\!V}}\!V_{\!{}_{\!N}}^{S}\!-\!L_{\!{}_{\!o}}\!W_{\!{}_{\!o}}\!-\!E)\!-\!\lambda_{\!{}_{\!5}}(L_{\!{}_{\!H}}\!+\!L_{\!{}_{\!o}}\!+\!L_{\!{}_{\!G}}\!+\!L_{\!{}_{\!V}}\!+\!L_{\!{}_{\!Z}}\!-\!L_{\!{}_{\!T}}) \end{split}$$

(3.10)

There are 21 decision variables to solve in the model, which are:  $L_{H};L_{G};L_{V};L_{o};Y_{G};N;X_{M};X_{H}^{H};X_{H}^{S};X_{H}^{P};G_{q};V_{N};G_{q}^{P};G_{q}^{S};V_{N}^{P};V_{N}^{S};$   $\lambda_{1};\lambda_{2};\lambda_{3};\lambda_{4};\lambda_{5}$ 



Therefore, one needs 21 equations to solve these 21 endogenous variables. From the first order conditions with respect to these decision variables, a system of 21 reduced form equations are derived. The system of equations, A1.1 to A1.21 in Appendix A1, gives the complete set of 21 equations needed to solve the 21 endogenous variables. All endogenous variables will be reduced form functions of the set of exogenous variables in the model, which are:  $P_H$ ;  $P_G$ ;  $L_T$ ;  $P_V$ ;  $P_M$ ;  $P_Y$ ;  $P_N$ ;  $W_o$ ; E;  $\Omega$ ;  $\beta$ ;  $\alpha$ ;  $\theta$ ; and  $\omega$ .

First order conditions A1.1, A1.2, A1.3 and A1.4 show how the household allocates its labour among the productive activities and leisure. The four conditions show that the optimum labour allocation is such that the marginal value of labour across the productive activities is equalised. By rearranging the first order conditions A1.8, A1.11 and A1.12 to  $\frac{\partial U}{\partial X_H^H} = \lambda_1$ ;  $\frac{\partial U}{\partial G_q} = \lambda_2$  and  $\frac{\partial U}{\partial V_N} = \lambda_3$ , respectively and then substitute the  $\lambda$ 's in the first order conditions A1.1, A1.2 and A1.3. The three conditions will also show that, at the optimum, the household allocates its labour across the productive activities that the marginal utility of labour in each of the activities is equal and is also equal to the marginal utility of leisure ( $\lambda_5$ ) (which represents the shadow wage or opportunity cost of household labour time). This shadow wage is internal to each household and depends on the full set of exogenous variables.

First order condition A1.4 can be rearranged to  $\lambda_4 W_o = \lambda_5$ . This condition shows that the decision on the participation in off-farm work is influenced by: off-farm wage rates ( $W_o$ ); marginal utility of income ( $\lambda_4$ ); and the marginal utility of leisure ( $\lambda_5$ ). The marginal utility of leisure can be equal to or higher than the off-farm wage rate. If it is equal, the household participates in off-farm work. If it is higher than the wage rate, the household will not supply labour to off-farm work.

First order condition A1.8 shows that in making decisions on the collection of a wetland product, a household equates the marginal utility of consuming the wetland product collected to the shadow costs of collecting the product ( $\lambda_1$ ) (which represents the opportunity cost of supplying labour for collecting the wetland product).



Similarly, the first order condition A1.11 shows that the household makes grain production decisions by equating the marginal utility of consuming grains produced with the marginal costs of grain production ( $\lambda_2$ ) (which represents the opportunity cost of labour used in grain production).

First order conditions A1.10, A1.13 and A1.15 relate to purchasable wetland, grain and livestock products and give us the familiar consumer theory results that the marginal rate of substitution between two goods purchased in positive quantities is equal to the ratio of their relative prices. In addition, these first order conditions also show that the household can improve its welfare by purchasing additional products from the market. However, in making the decision to purchase products from the market the household compares the costs of purchasing (the price) and the marginal utility gained from consuming purchased products (the welfare benefit). This result is the fundamental micro-economic theory of consumer behaviour, which states that a consumer equates the marginal utility to the price (or the marginal cost of collecting or producing its own) in purchasing goods from the market.

The selling of products (wetland, livestock and grain) reduces household welfare. The first order conditions for the decision to sell products A1.9, A1.14 and A1.16 show that the marginal rate of substitution between two goods is equal to the ratio of their relative prices. These first order conditions also show that in making the decision to sell a product in the market the household equates the marginal utility of income ( $\lambda_4$ ) derived from selling the product to the marginal utility forgone by choosing not to consume the product (welfare loss to the household). At the optimum, the marginal utility of income across the products is equalised at ( $\lambda_4$ ). In summary, the first order conditions for selling and purchasing decisions show that those households that sell and purchase products face a market price.

Conditions A1.17, A1.18 and A1.19 recover the production functions for: wetland products; grain and livestock products, which are functions of labour; production parameters; inputs (for the case of grain and livestock); and household endowment characteristics. First order conditions A1.20 and A1.21 recover the full budget and time constraints, respectively.



# 3.4 Concluding Summary

Rural households allocate their labour, capital and other resources between competing livelihood activities that include crop and livestock production, off-farm activities, harvesting of wetland resources and leisure. Households decide on the allocation of resources between these activities which maximises their utility given their resource endowment; prices; the efforts required (production technology); and household characteristics.

This chapter developed an analytical framework for analysing household labour allocation and production decisions for different livelihood activities including wetland activities. Drawing on previous works, an agricultural household model was developed as the analytical framework for analysing determinants of household labour allocation and supply decisions. The reduced form equations derived from the household model will be the basis for empirical analysis of the determinants of labour allocation and supply decisions for wetland products and agricultural output presented in the next chapter.



#### **CHAPTER 4**

# EMPIRICAL MODEL AND RESULTS OF THE DETERMINANTS OF HOUSEHOLD RESOURCE ALLOCATION AND SUPPLY DECISIONS

#### 4.1 Introduction

This chapter presents the empirical model for examining the determinants of household labour allocation and product supply decisions based on the analytical framework developed in Chapter 3. It also discusses results of the empirical analysis. The first section of the chapter gives a brief description of the study area. Section two presents data and data collection methods while a survey of the main uses of the studied wetland system is presented in the third section. Section four presents the empirical model and discusses the econometric estimation procedures used in the empirical analysis. Empirical results are presented and discussed in section five and a concluding summary of the chapter is given in section six.

#### 4.2 Description of the study area

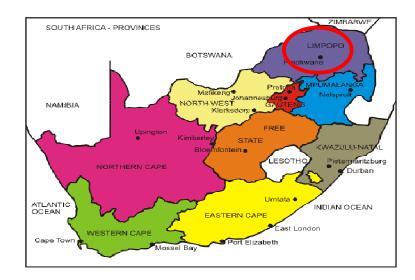
#### 4.2.1 Location of the area

This study was carried out in the Ga-Mampa wetland, which lies in the catchment of the Mohlapitsi River; a tributary of the Olifants River in the middle part of the Limpopo basin in South Africa. The wetland is a riverine system covering an area of approximately 120 ha (Kotze, 2005). The catchment is characterised by seasonal rainfall that largely occurs during the summer months (October to April). The area is located in the former homeland<sup>3</sup> area of Lebowa in Mafefe Ward 24 of the Lepelle-Nkumpi municipality in the Capricorn district of the Limpopo province in the northern part of South Africa. Typical of the former homelands of South Africa: the area is predominantly rural; employment levels are low; basic infrastructure is lacking; and poverty levels are high. In 2006, it was estimated that 2 800 people (394)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> These are also termed native reserves or tribal lands which were delineated under the Natives Land Act of 1913 (Wickins, 1981) for black people. They are typically located in marginal areas with low rainfall, less fertile soils and lack of access to basic services such as water and education facilities.



households) reside in the two main villages around the wetland, which represents 18% of the total population of the ward (Adekola, 2007).



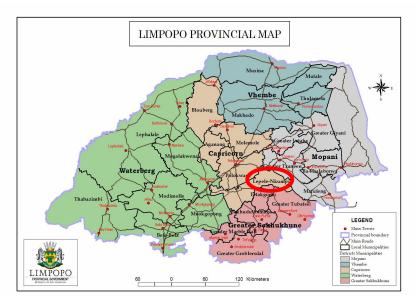


Figure 4.1: Maps showing the location of the Limpopo province and the Ga-Mampa area (Adekola, 2007)



# 4.2.2 Characterisation of the hydrology and ecology as well as trade-offs between ecosystem services in the studied wetland system

The Ga-Mampa wetland lies along the Mohlapitsi River. The geology underlying the wetland is a complex assemblage of sedimentary rocks, such as banded ironstone, chert and limestone. The soil formations in the wetland reflect the strong influence of the underlying parent rock material, climatic features and biological activity. Much of the wetland consists of fine-textured, poorly drained soils deposited on the valley floor by the river as well as well-drained sandy soils to sandy loam soils (Ferrand, 2004). The poorly drained areas support extensive organic (peat) soils maintained by permanent saturation and are surrounded by seasonally to temporarily saturated areas with predominantly mineral soils. The wetland soils support subsistence crop production although the productivity of the wetland soils has been undermined by progressive depletion of soil organic matter due to active tillage, artificial drainage and erosion (Kotze, 2005). In contrast, the adjacent hill slopes and dryland areas tend to have fragile, shallow, sandy soils with less agricultural potential.

The geology of the studied area supports groundwater storage. Dolomitic rocks, shales and banded ironstone, which are the main geological feature of the wetland, have an intermediate to high groundwater storage capacity (Kotze, 2005). In the wetland, shallow weathered aquifers are recharged by groundwater outflows from the adjacent hillslopes (Tinguery, 2006).

Most of the utilisable water in the Mohlapitsi catchment area is in the form of surface water. The wetland is an integral part of the hydrograph of the catchment. The Mohlapitsi River shows marked seasonal and inter-annual variation in flow due to seasonal and inter-annual variation in rainfall and unpredictable climate events such as floods and droughts. The seasonal and inter-annual variation in the river flow affects the welfare of communities in the Ga-Mampa area, as it is the main source of potable and irrigation water (Chiron, 2005).

Previous studies on the hydrology of the wetland system highlighted that there are some hydrological interactions between the wetland, Mohlapitsi River and the Olifants River. Darradi *et al.* (2006) reported that there is a common perception by



stakeholders living outside the Ga-Mampa valley that the wetland performs important hydrological functions, most notably the maintenance of dry season flow in the Olifants River downstream. McCartney (2005) investigated this phenomenon using historical flow data of the Mohlapitsi and Olifants Rivers and showed that the Mohlapitsi catchment contributes 3.9% of the mean annual runoff and approximately 16% of average flows at the end of the dry season (Figure 4.2).

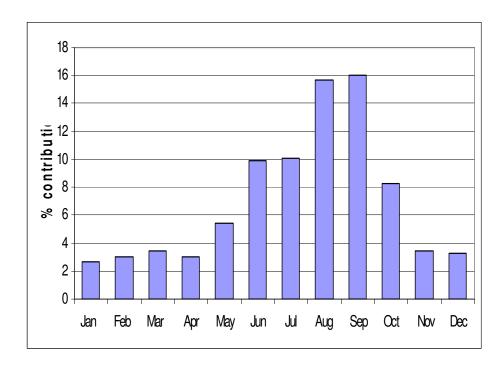
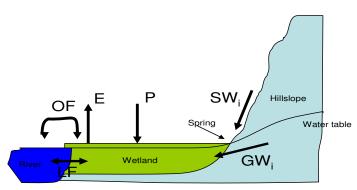


Figure 4.2: Contribution percentage of flow (i.e. monthly average) from the Mohlapitsi catchment to the Olifants River (McCartney 2005)

An ecological assessment study of the Ga-Mampa wetland by Kotze (2005) concluded that the hydrological input by the river to the wetland is very low and the wetland hydrology appears to be maintained predominantly by upstream flow and seepage of groundwater from the adjacent hillslopes. McCartney (2005) confirmed that the hydrology of the wetland is dominated by groundwater inflow from the surrounding catchment as shown by the presence of a large number of springs located at the edges of the wetland and close to the break of the slope at the valley sides. The main hydrological fluxes in the studied wetland are shown in the schematic diagram (Figure 4.3).





P = rainfall
E = evapotranspiration
LF = subsurface lateral flow to/from the river
OF = surface water moving to/from the river

 $SW_i$  = surface runoff moving into the wetland  $GW_i$  = groundwater moving into the wetland

Figure 4.3: Conceptual picture of the main hydrological fluxes in the Ga-Mampa wetland (McCartney, 2005)

The vegetation in the Ga-Mampa area comprises of relatively natural grassland vegetation and a distinct upper layer of woody plants (Sarron, 2005). Bushy vegetation dominates the surrounding mountains while riparian forests grow adjacent to the river channel or at the transition from the steep hillslope to the valley floor (Kotze, 2005). The valley bottom vegetation is predominantly herbaceous and the wetland supports different vegetation types, which vary according to their particular site preferences. The most extensive plant species in the wetland are reeds (*Phragmites australis* and *Phragmites mauritanus*) and sedges, which are used for construction and craft material, respectively. A wide range of edible plants occur across the wetland. Table 4.1 shows the vegetation characteristics of the Ga-Mampa wetland.



Table 4.1: Vegetation characteristics of the Ga-Mampa wetland

Vegetation type	Predominant species	Structure	Site characteristics	Natural extent
Phragmites marsh	Predominantly Phragmites mauritianus but also with Phragmites australis	Very tall (>3m) uniform stands	Permanently wet areas on the valley floor and in the river channel and its margin	Very extensive
Cladium mariscus marsh	Cladium mariscus	Very dense uniform stands (2m)	Permanently wet areas on the valley floor	Limited
Mixed marsh	Pycreus mundii, Thelypterus interrupta cf., Leersia hexandra and Phragmites mauritianus	Variable (0.5-2 m)	Permanently wet areas on the valley floor	Moderately extensive
Typha capensis marsh	Typha capensis	Uniform stands (2-3 m)	Primarily within the river channel in permanently inundated sites	Limited primarily to within the main stream channel
Miscanthus junceus meadow	Miscanthus junceus	Dense clumps (2 m) interspersed with short	On the valley floor in areas with seasonal wetness	Extensive
Mesic grassland	Cynodon dactylon and Phragmites mauritianus	Short (mainly <0.5 m)	On the valley floor in areas with sandy, moderately well drained soils	Limited
Hygrophilous grassland	Paspalum dilatatum, Pycreus mundtii, Phragmites mauritianus, and Imperata cylindrica	Short (mainly <0.5 m)	On the valley floor in areas with somewhat poorly drained soils (temporarily saturated)	Extensive, particularly along the margins
Riparian forest	Syzygium cordatum, Rauvolfia caffra and Ficus sycomorus	Generally closed canopy, >5 m	Adjacent to the river channel or at the transition from steep hillslope to valley floor where shallow, surface water is readily available to the trees	Moderately extensive

Source: Kotze (2005)

As will be discussed in detail later, the studied wetland provides several services with trade-offs between them. Trade-offs between wetland services occur locally and in the short term between crop production and livestock grazing while natural vegetation compete for land, water and labour resources. At a larger spatial scale, there is a potential trade-off between crop production and the river flow regulation and water supply downstream. In the long term, continuous use of wetland for agriculture may undermine the ecological integrity of the wetland through depletion of organic matter, soil erosion and lowering of shallow water thus impacting on the wetland's ability to provide ecosystem services, including crop production

#### 4.2.3 Main livelihood activities in the study area

The main source of livelihood for communities in the study area is small-scale subsistence agriculture. Households self-consume most of their production and sell the surplus in the market to raise cash income to purchase agricultural inputs and meet other expenses such as clothing, school fees etc. Agricultural production is mixed crop and livestock systems with cropping taking place under small-scale irrigation and in the wetland. There are three small-scale irrigation schemes in the area with an estimated area of 170 ha (Chiron, 2005). Approximately 160 households have access to irrigation plots, with an average irrigated area of 0.60 ha per household. Maize is the main crop grown under irrigation and in the wetland. A large proportion of the maize produced is used for home consumption while vegetables constitute the bulk of the marketed output.

More than 80% of the households in the study area are considered to be poor, earning a monthly income of less than 1000 South African Rands<sup>4</sup> (R). The main sources of income are agriculture, government social grants, pensions and remittances. Households receive social grants of R200 per month for children under the age of 14 years and adults aged over 64 years receive R800 per month. Approximately 35% of households depend on pensions while 30% of the households depend on off-farm activities for income (Ferrand, 2004). Those engaged in off-farm activities are mostly middle-aged males working in mines, large-scale commercial farms and other industries located in nearby towns. Part of their income is remitted to family members

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> One United States dollar (\$) was approximately equal to 7.5 SAR in 2009.



in rural areas. Some households hire labourers to ease labour shortages during peak farming periods (Ferrand, 2004). The average wage rate in the local labour market is R8 per hour (Adekola, 2007).

#### 4.3 Data and data collection methods

A combination of participatory rural appraisals (focus group discussions and key informant interviews) and formal methods (household surveys) were used. The former was used to gain a baseline understanding on the main livelihood strategies, the uses of the wetland and the types of users who make use of these resources as well as guide the design of the subsequent household survey. Two complimentary face-toface household surveys, using structured household questionnaires, were carried out in the study area in October, 2006. In both surveys a stratified random sampling strategy was used to select households for interviews. The stratification of the population was based on access to a wetland plot or not. The first survey was done in two rounds: the first was conducted in May, 2006; and the second in October, 2006. A total of 102 households were interviewed in the two phases using a structured questionnaire administered by local trained enumerators in the local language. The household questionnaire collected data on: household demographics; access to different types of assets (physical, financial or natural); use of wetland resources; description of crop production activities (area under cultivation, production levels, input use including labour, prices of inputs and output); sources of food and food security; and sources of income (Appendix A3).

The second complimentary survey was conducted in October 2006 and was aimed at generating information to assess the economic value of the provisioning services of the Ga-Mampa wetland (Adekola, 2007). In this survey a total of 66 households (thirty-three wetland cultivators and the same number of non-wetland cultivators) were interviewed and some of these households were part of the first survey. The household questionnaire used in this survey was aimed at collecting detailed quantitative information on: the harvesting of wetland products; wetland cropping; input use in wetland activities (including labour use); and prices. The questionnaire had three main sections: the demographic and socio-economic characteristics of respondents; general information on access and use of the wetland; and detailed

quantitative information on wetland products (i.e. quantity of product harvested, labour use and prices) (Appendix A4). Input-output information was also asked on crop production. Where market prices of wetland products could not be ascertained through the household survey and group discussions, information acquired during a visit to the local market in Ga-Mampa and Mafefe was used. Also prices of substitutes were also used as surrogates for market prices for wetland products where market prices could not be easily ascertained.

The data from the two surveys were pooled resulting in a sample size of one hundred and forty-three households. These households account for thirty-six percent of the total number of households residing in five villages around the wetland. Table 4.2 shows the distribution of the sampled households in the five villages. The sample fraction selected from each village (column 5) is proportional to the percentage of the village population in the area's total population (column 3).

Table 4.2: Sample distribution of interviewed households

Village	Estimated total number of households in village*	Number of households in village as percentage of total population in study area	Number of sampled households	Sampled households as percentage of total sampled households (%)
Mapagane	215	55	71	49.7
Ga-Moila	60	15	24	16.8
Manthlane	43	11	20	14.0
Mashushu	41	10	19	13.3
Marulatshiping	35	9	9	6.2
Total	394	100	143	100

<sup>\*</sup>Figures are based on estimates by Adekola (2007) compiled through field data.

As detailed, quantitative data on wetland products collected and labour time used while collecting were missing for households interviewed in the first survey, which were not part of the sample in the second survey<sup>5</sup> (although information on whether a

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> As households in the study area do not keep records of the quantities collected and the time used it was difficult to collect reliable data on these for all 143 households. However, the second survey collected more reliable data, because the survey was followed up with focus group discussions to validate information collected from the survey.



household harvests wetland products or not was available for these households). Mean values calculated from the second survey were used for the missing values.

Also it was not possible to collect reliable quantitative information on labour time used in off-farm activities, although the survey collected information on whether a household had members engaged in off-farm work. We therefore resorted to using a coefficient (or ratio) calculated using off-farm to on-farm mean labour shares presented in the work of Fisher *et al.* (2005) to calculate off-farm labour time by weighting farm labour time with the off-farm to farm labour share ratio for the households engaged in off-farm work.

### 4.4 The survey of wetland uses

In the survey, households were asked about their use of wetland products. Table 4.3 shows the number of households using the wetland for different uses and the estimated economic values per household for each service. Of the 143 households interviewed, 92% of them use the wetland in one way or another. The main provisioning services for households in the study area that are derived from the wetland are: edible plant collection; livestock grazing; crop production; domestic water extraction; reeds collection (*Phragmites mauritianus* and *Phragmites australis*); and sedge collection (*Cyperus latifolius* and *Cyperus sexangularis*). Using a direct market pricing approach, Adekola (2007) showed that the annual net financial value of these services is \$211 (USD) per household (excluding livestock grazing value) with crop production contributing the highest to the total financial value of the wetland with an estimated value per household of \$1072 (USD) per annum. The same study showed that the wetland contributes a cash income of \$35 (USD) per household per annum, with sedge harvesting contributing the most to the household cash income compared to all the other services.

The intensity of use varies throughout the year. The uses are discussed in detail below.





Table 4.3: Number of households using wetlands for different uses and estimated values per household

Wetland use	Number of households in sample (n=143)	Net financial value of service per user household (US\$/household/annum)	Cash income per user household (US\$/household/annum)
Edible plants collection	80 (56%)	84	2
Livestock grazing*	66 (46%)	192	0
Crop production	60 (42%)	1072	10
Domestic water abstraction	37 (26%)	9	0
Reed collection	34 (24%)	93	4
Sedge collection	33 (23%)	88	20
Firewood collection	2 (1.4%)	667	0
Fishing	5 (3.5%)	12	0
No use	11 (8%)	-	-

<sup>\*</sup> Values for livestock grazing are unreliable as data used was unreliable

Source: Household survey data& Adekola (2007)

#### 4.4.1 Edible plants collection

The studied wetland system provides a wide range of edible plants which play an important role in the diversification of people's diet. The plants grow across the wetland in both the cultivated and wetland areas. Of the 143 households interviewed, 56% collect edible plants from the wetland. Collection of edible plants takes place all year round with most of the collection taking place between November and March. Some households collect excess plants in the wet season and sundry them for use in the dry season when they are no longer obtainable.

# 4.4.2 Crop production

Wetland agriculture contributes significantly to food security and incomes of households residing in the vicinity of the wetland. Adekola (2007) found that crop production contributes the highest to the total financial value of the wetland with an

estimated value per household of \$1072 (USD) per annum. The wetland is a key agricultural resource because of its fertile peat soils and ability to store water during the dry season, which enables dry season crop production. However, the conversion of the wetland to agriculture is quite recent and partly due to the collapse of irrigation schemes, which used to account for the bulk of agricultural production in the last 10 to 15 years. Recurring droughts, which were experienced in the area since 2000, also contributed to the increasing trend in the conversion of the wetland to croplands. Sarron (2005) estimated that between 1996 and 2004 half the wetland had been converted to agriculture with a corresponding decrease in the wetland area (Figure 4.4). By 2006, 66 ha of the wetland had been converted to agriculture (Adekola, 2007).

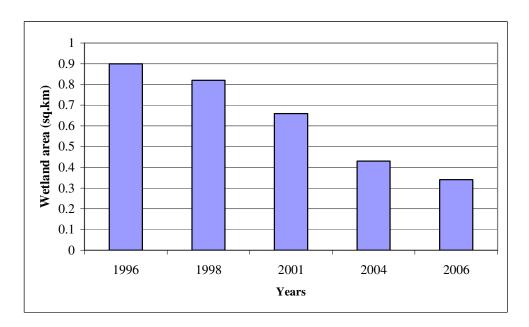


Figure 4.4: Trend in wetland area in the Ga-Mampa wetland (Sarron, 2005)

Of the households who were interviewed, 42% reported that they use the wetland for crop production although 25% of all households in the study area cultivate in the wetland. An average wetland plot size per wetland-cultivating household is 5.3 bambas<sup>6</sup> (0.66 ha). Most of them (82%) reported that the reasons why they cultivate

•

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> Bamba is the local unit for measuring a land area. 12 bambas = 1 hectare.



in the wetland are because of recurrence of droughts, its fertile soils and its all year round soil moisture.

Maize is the main crop that is produced during the rainy season (October to April) and is often intercropped with vegetables and groundnuts. Coriander and beans are the main dry season crops. Few farmers grow vegetables (tomatoes, onions, spinach, cabbages, etc.).

# 4.4.3 Livestock grazing

Livestock grazing is another important service provided by the wetland. Livestock generally graze in the adjacent uplands during the wet season. However, during the dry season the wetland is the main source of dry season grazing and watering, because the wetland is more accessible to animals during this period as levels of soil moisture are lower and crop production is limited. During this period livestock also feed on crop residues from the preceding wet season's wetland crops. The crop-livestock interaction is important, but the two systems do compete for space. Grazing in the wetland is mostly uncontrolled and, in some instances, livestock trespass into the crop fields as the cropped area is not fenced.

#### 4.4.4 Reeds and sedge harvesting

Reeds and sedges are harvested by some households in the study area, but in relatively small quantities compared to other wetland areas, mainly due to the availability of preferred substitutes for their uses as well as the scarcity of these resources in the wetland system. Approximately 24% of the interviewed households harvest reeds and sedges from the wetland. Reeds are used in fencing courtyards and for construction purposes (as roofing material). Sedges are used in making art and craft materials. Approximately 19% of the harvested reeds are sold on the local market (Adekola, 2007). Unlike reeds, sedges are rarely used in raw form, they are processed into different art and craft items such as baskets and floor mats, the bulk of which is sold in the local market. Sedge harvesting contributes the most to the households' cash income compared to all the other provisioning services and is estimated to contribute a cash income of \$20 (USD) per household per year.



Based on information collected through focus group discussions, the quantities of reeds and sedge harvested from the wetland have declined over the past five years due to the decrease in their availability. A decrease in the accessibility of these resources is as a result of the expansion of wetland agriculture, which demonstrates the existence of trade-offs between crop production and collection of natural products (Kotze, 2005; Sarron, 2005). Also, the harvesting of reeds has declined due to "modernisation" as people now prefer modern roofing materials such as zinc.

The reeds and sedge are harvested at a certain time; this is regulated by the local leaders (the headman). Harvesting of these wetland products is restricted to the winter period (June and July) to allow for the regeneration of the products. Those who violate this restriction are summoned by the village head for a disciplinary hearing. However, most of these hearings just end up with the violators being cautioned and in very rare cases fined. This is done so as to maintain harmony in the community.

#### 4.4.5 Domestic water abstraction

Water is abstracted from the wetland for a variety of purposes, including: drinking, washing, bathing; and building among others (Darradi *et al.*, 2006). Of the interviewd households, 26% abstract water for domestic purposes. Most of the households that abstract water from the wetland are from one of the villages which have a limited water supply. In addition, some households from the other villages use wetland water for drinking and bathing while engaging in crop production or edible plant collection. Domestic water abstraction is highest during the wet season due to its complementarity to wetland cropping.

Based on the household survey and previous studies carried out in the study area (Adekola, 2007) it was shown that some households engage in a combination of uses and there are complementarities between wetland uses for some households. For instance, it was noted that there are some complementarities between wetland cropping, edible plants collection, domestic water abstraction and reeds and sedge collection.



### 4.5 The empirical model

From the solution of the first order optimality conditions presented in the previous chapter, a set of reduced form equations can be derived showing the endogenous variables as functions of all the exogenous variables. As done in other similar studies, these equations form the basis for empirical estimation (Heltberg *et al.*, 2000; Fisher *et al.*, 2005; Chen *et al.*, 2006). As shown earlier, the household model comprises of 21endogenous variables and therefore we have 21 reduced form equations. However, it is not necessary to estimate the full system of equations (Sadoulet and De Janvry, 1995).

Given that our primary interest is to examine the factors that influence household labour use in each of the livelihood activities (grain production, livestock production, off-farm work and collection of wetland products) and the supply of grain and wetland products, we focus our empirical analysis on the following endogenous variables: household labour time used in each of the productive activities  $(L_o, L_H, L_V, L_G)$ ; the quantity of grain supplied  $(G_q)$ ; and the wetland product harvested by households  $(X_H^H)$ . The reduced form functions for  $G_q$  and  $X_H^H$  will give rise to household supply functions for grain and wetland products, respectively. These are specified as:

$$G_{q} = G_{q}(L_{T}, E, \Omega, P_{j}, W_{o}, \beta, \alpha, \theta, \omega, \mu_{G})$$

$$X_{H}^{H} = X_{H}(L_{T}, E, \Omega, P_{i}, W_{o}, \beta, \alpha, \theta, \omega, \mu_{H})$$

$$(4.1)$$

Where  $\mu_G$  and  $\mu_H$  are error terms and  $P_j$  denotes market prices for wetland products, grain, livestock, agricultural inputs, livestock inputs and other market goods.

The main crop grown in the study area is maize and hence represents grain in this case. Livestock labour use and products supply functions are not included in the empirical analysis as livestock data (labour time spent and products) were not reliable in part because livestock grazing is mainly uncontrolled with minimum labour use and livestock is mainly used for draft power and less for meat and milk. The reduced form



equation for household labour time used in each of the livelihood activities is given by:

$$L_{i} = L(L_{T}, E, \Omega, P_{i}, W_{o}, \beta, \alpha, \theta, \omega, \mu_{i})$$

$$(4.2)$$

Where subscript i represents wetland product collection, grain production and offfarm work while  $\mu_i$  is the error term.

### 4.5.1 Model variables and expected direction of relationships

The dependent variables in this study's empirical model are the amount of labour time used in each of the productive activities; and quantities of grain and wetland products supplied. The selection of explanatory variables for the empirical model was based on the analytical framework developed earlier. The explanatory variables in the labour use equations and the grain and wetland products supply functions include: exogenous variables, such as household demographic and endowment characteristics; products and inputs prices; household exogenous income and off-farm wage rates based on this study's analytical framework.

The selection of explanatory variables pertaining household demographic and endowment characteristics is informed by theoretical and empirical literature and data availability. Table 4.4 presents definitions of variables used in the empirical analysis.

Various studies have shown that household demographic characteristics such as gender, the size of the household, the age of the head of the household and a household's education level influences rural household labour supply decisions for different livelihood activities, including natural resource activities (Reardon and Vosti, 1995; Fafchamps and Quisumbing, 1998; Jolliffe, 2004; Matshe and Young, 2004). A household's size is used as a proxy for household labour time endowment  $(L_T)$ . It is expected that a household's size is positively related to the labour that is allocated to grain production, collection of wetland products and off-farm work, because of the availability of surplus labour. Accordingly, it is expected that a



household's size should be positively related to grain and wetland product supply due to the availability of labour to use in the production of these products.

Matshe and Young (2004) showed that gender influences labour allocation decisions of rural households and found, like Fafchamps and Quisumbing (1998) that because of their time commitment to activities within the household, females are less likely to participate in off-farm activities than males. In most subsistence farming communities in Africa women tend to do much of the agricultural work and interact with the environment more often than their male counterparts. Therefore, one can expect female-headed households to allocate more time to grain production and collection of wetland products and less time to off-farm work. One can also therefore expect female-headed households to supply more grain and wetland products than their male-headed counterparts.

It can expected that the head of the household's age is positively related to labour used in grain production and collection of wetland products, but negatively related to labour time allocated to off-farm work. This is based on the expectation that older heads have more experience in farming and collection of wetland products. Their experience creates inertia and results in them being interested in their traditional sources of livelihood (farming and natural product collection). The position of older heads in the social network might also give them better access to natural resources including wetland products (land for cropping in the wetland and natural products). Accordingly, it is expected that the age of a household head has a positive effect on grain and wetland product supply.

Many empirical studies have shown that education increases potential employment opportunities in off-farm work, but negatively affects the labour time allocated to the collection of natural products and farm work (Fafchamps and Quisumbing, 1998; Abdulai and Regmi, 2000; Jolliffe, 2004; Matshe and Young, 2004; Fisher *et al.*, 2005; Chen *et al.*, 2006). Therefore, it is hypothesised that the education level of the head of the household is negatively related to labour allocated to grain production and the collection of wetland products, but positively related to time worked off-farm. It is also expected that the education level of a household's head to be negatively related to supply of wetland products and grain.



Table 4.4 Definition of variables used in the econometric analysis

Variable	Definition of variable	Value/measure
Dependent variables		
L <sub>i</sub>	Labour time used in grain production, wetland products collection or off-farm activities	Hours per year
X <sub>H</sub>	Quantity of wetland products supplied (sum of harvested reeds and sedges)	Quantity (in kilograms) per year
$G_{ m q}$	Quantity of maize supplied	Kilograms per year
Explanatory variables		
$L_{\scriptscriptstyle  m T}$	Household labour time endowment. Household size is used as a proxy	Number of household members
Е	Household exogenous income (includes income from social transfers and pensions)	Rands per month
$P_{G}$	Price of agricultural grain <sup>1</sup>	Rands per kilogram
P <sub>H</sub>	Price of wetland products (average price of reeds, sedge and edible plants was used)	Rands per kilogram
$P_{M}$	Price of market goods.  Expenditure on basic food items per capita is used as proxy	Rands per capita per year
P <sub>Y</sub>	Price of agricultural inputs. Price of maize seed is used as a proxy.	Rands per kilogram
W <sub>o</sub>	Off-farm wage rate	Rands per hour
Houseduc	Education level of household head	Number of years of schooling
Head gender	Gender of household head	1=male 0=female
Head age	Age of household head	Number of years
Wealthind	Household wealth status. An index capturing household assets (land, livestock, farm assets) is constructed	Index

 $^{1}$ For  $P_{G}$ ,  $P_{H}$ ,  $P_{M}$  and  $P_{Y}$  a village's average prices are used as there was less variation in these prices for households in the same village. Similarly, a village's average wage rate was used.

A household's exogenous income is another explanatory variable in the labour and wetland product and grain supply equations with social grants, pensions and remittances representing its main forms in the study area. According to Fafchamps and Quisumbing (1998) and Chen *et al.* (2006) a household's exogenous income decreases labour time allocated to crop production and off-farm work and induces higher consumption of leisure. Following this, it is expected that a household's exogenous income to be negatively related to labour time used in off-farm work, grain production and the collection of wetland products.

With regards to the impact of exogenous income on grain supply, Collier and Lal (1986) found that non-farm income is positively related to crop output and hence, supply of crop output due to a better ability to hire labour and purchase agricultural inputs. In contrast, Holden *et al.* (2004) found that better access to non-farm income (exogenous or off-farm work income) reduces incentives to do farming, which leads to lower agricultural production (i.e. households become net buyers of food). Therefore, the impact of exogenous income on supply of grain could be positive or negative. We expect a household's exogenous income to be negatively related to labour time used in wetland products harvesting since it relaxes the household cash constraint inducing higher consumption of leisure thereby reducing labour time used in wetland products harvesting. Similarly, wetland products supply is expected to be negatively related to a household's exogenous income as it reduces the incentive to seek additional income from wetland activities.

One expects that the price of wetland products to be positively related to labour used in collecting wetland products and the supply of the product. Similarly, one can expect the price of grain to be positively related to labour used in grain production and grain supply. Both the price of wetland products and grain are expected to negatively impact on labour used in off-farm work.

An increase in the price of agricultural inputs reduces returns to agriculture and is therefore expected to result in the shifting of household labour resources away from grain production towards off-farm work and wetland product collection. As a result, the supply of wetland products is expected to increase and that of grain reduced. The price of market goods is expected to be positively related to labour time used in the grain production, off-farm work and collection of wetland products since an increase in the price of market goods reduces household real income, inducing the household



to forego leisure. Accordingly, the supply of wetland products is expected to be positively related to the price of market goods, but a negative relationship with grain supply is expected since a high price of market goods reduces the affordability of agricultural inputs.

The off-farm wage rate is expected to be positively related to labour used in off-farm work but negatively related to labour used in grain production and in the collection of wetland products. Therefore, a negative relationship between off-farm wage rates and supply of grain and wetland products is expected.

Many studies have shown that wealth status influences labour allocation decisions of rural households. Although wealthier households are more likely to participate in off-farm work than the poor, they spend less time in the activity (Matshe and Young, 2004). Several studies have found that the poor spend more time on the collection of natural products and collect more quantities than the non-poor (Turpie *et al.*, 1999; Campbell *et al.*, 2002; Chen *et al.*, 2006; Kipkemboi *et al.*, 2007). But the effects of wealth on the collection of wetland products and the supply of these could also be positive in situations where wealthier households have better access to the wetland products, as was demonstrated by Turpie *et al.* (1999) for some wetland sites in the Zambezi basin.

Thus, the relationship between wealth status and labour use and the supply of wetland products could be positive or negative. The relationship between a household's wealth status and the supply of grain is expected to be positive as wealthier households are expected to have more farm assets to enhance farm productivity. However, one may expect wealthier households to allocate less of their time to grain production given that they can hire labour and also can use machinery for some of the activities which are done manually by poor households.

In developing the wealth index, the author followed the approach of Campbell *et al.* (2002) and Démurger and Fournier (2006) in developing a composite wealth index computed as a linear combination of household assets using a principal component



analysis (PCA)<sup>7</sup>. The key household asset variables used for constructing the wealth index are based on household assets identified by Tinguery (2006) through participatory wealth ranking conducted in the study area<sup>8</sup>. In constructing the household wealth index, physical assets were first categorised into three main variables: farm assets (hoe, shovel, plough etc.); domestic assets (radio, television, telephone etc.); and transport equipment (bicycle, motorcycle etc.). A PCA was then done using 6 variables namely: housing type; farm assets; domestic assets; transport equipment; number of livestock (expressed in Tropical Livestock Units); and land area. The index was computed by multiplying the standardised value of each of the 6 variables by the first factorial coordinate of the variable in the PCA and then summed across all 6 variables. A wealth index computed in this way is much more encompassing and better reflects the wealth status of a household than the use of a single proxy variable, as done in most studies.

#### 4.5.2 Econometric estimation procedures

Reduced form models 4.1 and 4.2 constitute the system of equations, which we estimate econometrically. As the error terms across the equations in the system are potentially correlated due to the fact that the same explanatory variables and unobserved characteristics may influence the different equations, estimating the individual equations using ordinary least-squares yields biased and inconsistent estimates as it ignores error correlations across equations (Woodridge, 2002). Seemingly unrelated regression (SUR) models proposed by Zellner (1962), are the most appropriate econometric techniques to account for the cross equation correlations. The merit of the SUR model is that it allows the estimation of the system of equations simultaneously, thereby controlling correlation across the error terms (residuals) in the different equations. This yields unbiased and efficient estimates (Bartels and Fiebig, 1991).

This study accordingly used the SUR procedure to jointly estimate models 4.1 and 4.2 as a system. It should be noted that if the regressors in each equation are the same as

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> This technique involves combining several original variables into few derived variables or principal components (factors). In this case the single derived variable is a wealth index.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> A detailed discussion on the construction of the wealth index is given in Jogo *et al.* (2008)



is in this study's case, then the parameters of each independent variable obtained by a SUR model are identical to those obtained through equation-by-equation ordinary least-squares estimation (Greene, 2003). However, it is important to know that even when this is the case, there is still a good reason to estimate the equations jointly using a SUR model (Woodridge, 2002). One reason for this is that one may be interested in testing joint hypotheses involving parameters in different equations.

The Breusch-Pagan test was employed to test the null hypothesis that the error terms of the equations in the system are independent. The results of the test showed that  $\chi^2(6) = 47.17$ ; p<0.001 and therefore the null hypothesis of independence of errors across the equations is rejected and hence the use of the SUR model to jointly estimate the equations is justified.

#### 4.6 Empirical results and discussion

#### 4.6.1 Summary statistics of variables used in the econometric analysis

Table 4.5 presents descriptive statistics of the variables used in the econometric analysis. The statistics show that of the 143 households interviewed, 53% were female-headed. The average age of household heads is 55.5 years. Household size ranges from 2 to 18, with an average of 7.3 persons per household. Education levels in the study area are quite low; the average number of years of education of a household head is 5.5 years, which corresponds to primary level education. This mirrors the picture at the district level where a large proportion of the population attained up to primary level education (Statistics South Africa, 2004). Only 28% of the interviewed households had a member with secondary level education. The low education attainment in the area could be attributed to poor access to basic educational facilities, which characterises most rural areas in South Africa due to the segregationist policies implemented during the apartheid era.

More than 60% of the households in the study area depend on exogenous income sources in the form of social grants, remittances and pensions. Household monthly exogenous income varies widely across households due to differences in demographic

structure of households, especially in terms of age composition<sup>9</sup>. Of the households in the sample, 23% had a household member engaged in off-farm work. Segmentation in the labour market prohibits some people from engaging in off-farm wage employment possibly due to lack of required education level, skills and capacity. Opportunities for off-farm work are limited to jobs in mines, temporary road works, working in nearby large-scale farms and government jobs in health and education departments.

Prices of agricultural output, agricultural inputs, wetland products and market goods and off-farm wage rates are almost the same for all households living in the same village and therefore village average prices and wage rates were used.

Table 4.5: Descriptive statistics of variables used in the econometric analysis

Variable	Mean (n=143)
Dependent variables	
Labour used in grain	285 (126)
production(hours/household/year)	
Labour used in off-farm work (hours/household/year)	40 (14)
Labour used in collection of wetland products	66 (112)
(hours/household/year)	
Grain supply (kgs/household/year)	843 (581)
Wetland products supply (kgs/household/year)	246 (357)
Explanatory variables <sup>1</sup>	
Household size	7.3 (3.2)
Head of household's age (years)	55.5 (12.9)
Household head's education (years)	5.5 (3.7)
Head of household's gender (% male-headed)	46.9
Household exogenous income (Rands/month)	1000 (757)
Price of grain (Rands/kg)	1.58 (5.46)
Price of agricultural inputs (Rands/ kg)	5.29 (3.60)
Price of wetland product (Rands/kg)	2 (4.44)
Price of market goods (Rands)	342 (548)
Wage rate (Rands/hour)	8 (10.2)

Figures in parenthesis are standard deviations

<sup>1</sup>Wealth index is not reported as it is an index ranging from -4.3 to 4.3 with a mean of 0.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> The amount of exogenous income depends on the age structure of the household. Households receive social grants for children under the age of 14 years at the rate of R200 per month and old people aged over 64 years receive R800 per month.

Table 4.5 also shows the average household labour time used in different livelihood activities<sup>10</sup>. The figure for labour time allocated to off-farm work compares reasonably well with that from a study on smallholder agricultural households in Zimbabwe by Matshe and Young (2004) although it's higher presumably due to the fact that there are more off-farm opportunities in the study area than those in Zimbabwe.

Households spend most of their time on farm activities presumably due to the high priority given to food security through own production. Low levels of education and skills reduce the productivity and returns from off-farm work, which reflect the opportunity cost of farm labour time. Therefore households rationally allocate more time to farm work and collection of wetland products than off-farm work. This finding is consistent with that of Laszlo (2008) and Jolliffe (2004) that on average rural households particularly those with lower levels of education allocate more labour time to farm activities than to off-farm activities despite the fact that the returns to labour time are lower in farm activities than in off-farm work. This can also be attributed to the overriding importance of farm activities in enhancing food security among rural households in developing countries.

### 4.6.2 Econometric results

Table 4.6 presents results of the SUR model for labour allocation and supply decisions for grain and wetland products. The results indicate that household size is positively related to the amount of labour time used in grain production, collection of wetland products and off-farm work. This result can be attributed to the fact that larger families have surplus labour to allocate to these livelihood activities. The positive relationship between household size and labour allocated to off-farm work is consistent with income diversification strategies for risk smoothing. As the household size increases the household diversifies its income base and diverts part of its labour force into off-farm activities to generate more income in order to meet the increased consumption demands (Fafchamps and Quisumbing, 1998). This hypothesis is

-

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>10</sup> Labour hours worked per year were calculated from respondent estimates of how many hours are worked per week and the number of weeks worked per year for each activity.



supported by the findings from our survey data which shows that 55% of the households engaged in off-farm activities are large (above average) families.

The positive relationship between household size and the supply of grain and wetland products can also be explained by availability of labour resources to use in grain production and the collection of wetland products.

As expected, results indicate that female-headed households spend more time in grain production and collection of wetland products and accordingly supply more grain and wetland products than their male-headed counterparts. This could be explained by the fact that in most rural smallholder farming communities in South Africa women do most of the agricultural work and have more farming experience than men. In addition, this result could be attributed to the fact that female-headed households have limited access to off-farm income opportunities (this study's household survey data shows that the proportion of households with access to income from off-farm activities is 27% and 20% for male and female-headed households, respectively) and have surplus labour to engage in harvesting of wetland products (average household size for female headed households is 7.8 and that for male-headed households is 6.7). This result corroborates with that of Kipkemboi *et al.* (2007) who found that female-headed households collect more quantities of wetland products than their male-headed counter-parts.

As expected, the education level of the head of the household has a positive effect on labour time allocated to off-farm work and a negative effect on labour used in grain production and the collection of wetland products. The significant positive effect of education on labour time spend in off-farm work can be explained by the fact that education increases one's potential productivity in off- farm work (because, for example, educated household heads are more knowledgeable of employment opportunities and more adaptable in a range of tasks that they are able to perform) and therefore increases the opportunity for lucrative off-farm work. Households with better-educated heads spend less time collecting wetland products, because the opportunity cost of spending their time collecting wetland products (in terms of off-farm income foregone) is very high. Accordingly, household education is negatively related to the supply of wetland products. Other studies by Fisher *et al.* (2005); Chen



et al. (2006) and Narain et al. (2008) also found a negative relationship between education and the quantity of natural products collected.

While education has a negative effect on labour input in grain production, it has a positive effect on grain supply. Hence, households with more educated heads are more efficient in grain production. This could be because education enhances opportunities for off-farm work and therefore leads to less labour allocated to on farm work but the resultant increased income from off-farm activities provides the necessary financial resources required to purchase agricultural inputs, which has a positive effect on grain supply.

Household exogenous income has a significant negative impact on labour used in grain production, collection of wetland products and off-farm work. By relaxing the household income constraint, exogenous income reduces the need to undertake onfarm, off-farm and natural products collection activities and induces higher consumption of leisure. Findings consistent with ours are reported by Matshe and Young (2004), who found exogenous income to be negatively related to hours worked off-farm and Chen *et al.* (2006) who found a negative relationship between exogenous income and labour input in fuelwood collection.

In line with the negative relationship between labour input in the collection of wetland products and exogenous income, the supply of wetland products is negatively related to household exogenous income. Although a household's exogenous income reduces labour input in grain production as highlighted above, it increases the supply of grain. A possible explanation for this result is that exogenous income relaxes household liquidity constraints thereby enhancing the ability to purchase productivity-enhancing inputs. Although this result contradicts that of Holden *et al.* (2004), who found a negative relationship between non-farm income and production and supply of agricultural output, it is in line with that of Collier and Lal (1986) that non-farm income is positively related to crop output and supply.

Though statistically insignificant the signs of the coefficients for price of wetland products and that of grain show the expected negative cross-price effects on labour allocation, which shows that the livelihood activities compete for labour resources.

This is also confirmed by the negative cross-price effects of supply of grain and wetland products. With regards to own price effects on supply, the results show a positive supply response of grain and wetland products to price, which is consistent with the microeconomics foundations of an upward sloping supply curve. The insignificance of prices could imply that markets for wetland products are too thin such that labour allocation and supply decisions are influenced more by subsistence considerations in which case a possible extension of this work would be to use endogenously determined household-specific shadow prices.

The results show that the price of agricultural inputs is positively related to labour allocated to off-farm work and wetland products harvesting, but negatively related to labour input in grain production and the supply of grain. A possible explanation for this result is that increased agricultural input prices increase input costs and reduce returns to production to which households respond by using less labour and shift some of their labour resources towards off-farm work and wetland product harvesting thereby reducing grain supply. The other possible explanation is that as price of maize seed increases farmers switch to using traditional seed varieties with a low productivity potential with a negative impact on supply and use less labour because of the expected low returns to labour investment.

Off-farm wage rates were found to be negatively related to labour input in grain production and the collection of wetland products, but positively related to labour supply to off-farm work. As labour returns to grain production and wetland biomass harvesting are quite low (Adekola [2007] estimated that the returns to labour in reeds and sedge harvesting to be approximately R15 and R9 per hour, respectively), a higher off-farm wage rate increases the opportunity cost of labour used in grain production and the collection of wetland biomass products and therefore results in labour resources being shifted away from these activities towards off-farm work. Accordingly, the supply of wetland products significantly decreases. The positive relationship between off-farm wage rates and labour used in off-farm work conforms with the upward sloping labour supply curve, which shows that as the wage rate increases leisure becomes relatively more expensive (the opportunity cost of leisure increases) causing households to substitute away from leisure to more work.



Table 4.6: Seemingly unrelated regression results for labour use in productive activities and supply of grain and wetland products.

	Dependent variables				
Independent variables	Labour used in grain production	Labour used in off-farm work	Labour used in collection of wetland products	Grain supply	Wetland products supply
Household size	0.71* (1.93)	0.37* (2.34)	2.09 (0.73)	0.47* (3.21)	12.13* (2.15)
Age of household head	0.24 (0.50)	-0.66 (1.03)	0.43 (0.14)	0.27 (0.98)	3.83 (0.18)
Gender of household head	-0.19** (1.37)	0.45 (0.78)	-0.73 (0.01)	-0.18 (1.12)	-0.62 (0.95)
Education level of household head	-0.26(1.56)	0.07 **(4.17)	-0.72** (3.15)	0.95(0.15)	-0.75 (1.23)
Household exogenous income	-0.016** (2.06)	-0.74* (2.57)	-0.02* (1.53)	0.01* (1.08)	-0.09** (4.57)
Price of market goods	-0.001 (0.96)	0.93 (1.07)	-0.12 (1.37)	-0.08 (0.13)	-0.37 (0.89)
Price of agricultural input	-0.01 (0.12)	0.64 (1.12)	0.34 (1.24)	-0.08** (3.16)	0.11 (1.67)
Price of grain	0.054 (0.12)	-0.12 (1.67)	-0.45 (0.15)	0.058** (0.37)	-0.13 (0.78)
Price of wetland products	-0.01(1.20)	-0.01 (0.01)	0.02 (0.45)	-0.01 (0.13)	0.01 (0.220
Wage rate	-0.039** (6.32)	0.014* (3.24)	-0.086* (1.47)	-0.013 (0.03)	-0.036** (3.07)
Wealth index	-0.07 (0.20)	-0.12* (3.27)	-0.17* (1.84)	0.24** (3.91)	-2.17* (2.89)
Constant	4.63 (2.97)	-9.69 (0.11)	2.13 (0.23)	-2.19 (1.19)	-1.62 (0.50)
Breusch-Pagan test for independence of residuals $(\chi^2)$	47.17				

Absolute values of z-statistics in parenthesis; \*\*denotes significance at 5% and \* at 10% level of significance.

Household wealth status has a significant negative effect on labour input in wetland products collection and the supply of these products. This implies that poor households spend more time collecting wetland products and accordingly supply more of these products than the wealthier households. This could be attributed to the fact

that unlike the wealthier households, poor households have limited access to assets and other sources of income (non-resource based off-farm income sources) that can buffer them against negative income and food shortfalls and they also cannot afford alternatives to wetland products. The results of the author's survey show that of the 23% of the surveyed households who have access to off-farm income only 27% belong to the poor category. This result is in line with the evidence found in other studies in rural South Africa that more well-off households often substitute collected goods with purchased alternatives (e.g. Dovie, 2001). This result also supports findings by studies that show that poorer households are more reliant on environmental resources than wealthier households (Barrett et al., 2001; Fisher, 2004; Shackleton and Shackleton, 2006). With regards to wetland products, a study by Turpie et al. (1999) also found that poor households collect greater quantities of wetland products than the wealthier households in the Barotse floodplain wetlands (western Zambia) and in the Lower Shire floodplain wetlands (Malawi and Mozambique) although other wetlands in the same study showed an opposite result demonstrating the mixed nature of the findings on the relationship between wealth and natural resource use. .

This study's results also indicate that a household's wealth status has a negative effect on labour time allocated to grain production and off-farm work. Asset-poor households put more labour input into food production and spend more time with off-farm work due to their low marginal productivity of farm labour and the need to meet household food requirements. Wealthier households do less on-farm and off-farm work compared to the poor. This result is similar to that of Matshe and Young (2004) and Fafchamps and Quisumbing (1998) who also found that wealthier households spend less time working off-farm.

Although households who are better-off allocate less time to grain production than their poorer counterparts, they supply more grain presumably due to their better access to productive assets (livestock, farm implements, land), which enhance agricultural productivity.



# **4.7 Concluding Summary**

This chapter analysed the factors that influence household labour allocation and supply decisions by rural households for grain production, off-farm work and wetland products. Reduced form labour use and grain and wetland product supply equations derived from an agricultural household model were estimated jointly using a SUR approach to analyse the determinants of household labour allocation and product supply decisions.

The results presented in this chapter indicated that large families have more workers available to diversify their income base by allocating more labour time to on-farm and off-farm activities than smaller families. The positive and significant effect of household size on grain supply shows that it is critical to alleviate labour bottlenecks (perhaps through adoption of labour saving technologies) in order to improve the supply of the staple crop and enhance food security among rural households.

Our results showed that education is positively related to labour time allocated to offfarm activities, which implies that investment in education and skills development of the rural population is important for the rural population to benefit from growth in the non-farm sector. Since women have relatively limited access to off-farm employment opportunities, gender mainstreaming in rural education programmes is important to improve education opportunities for women to enhance their potential for employment in the off-farm sector.

The positive effect of exogenous income on grain supply and its negative effect on the supply of wetland products shows that policy measures, which reduce household liquidity constraints (e.g. improved access to credit and off-farm income opportunities), can improve food security among rural households and at the same time provide incentives for rural households to conserve wetland resources.

The responsiveness of grain supply to prices (of input and grain) shows that government intervention in agricultural markets can have significant impacts on farm supply. Government regulations, which artificially suppress producer prices and





increase input prices, can create a disincentive for farmers to produce. Therefore, the government, in close partnership with the private sector, should strongly support and strengthen reforms in the input and output markets to ensure that input and output prices provide incentives for farmers to invest in agriculture.

The finding that poor households spend more time on the collection of wetland products and supply more of these products has two implications: first, there is need to integrate wetland management and poverty reduction to provide incentives for the poor to conserve wetland resources; and second, environmental protection policies limiting access to the wetland resources increase inequality among rural populations and deepen poverty, because poorer households suffer more intensively from deprivation of the resource.



### **CHAPTER 5**

# REVIEW OF APPROACHES TO ASSESS THE IMPACTS OF MANAGEMENT AND POLICY SCENARIOS ON ECOSYSTEM FUNCTIONING AND HUMAN WELL-BEING

### 5.1 Introduction

As highlighted in Chapter 1, one of the limitations to the sustainable management of wetlands in Africa is: the poor understanding of the consequences of alternative policy and management regimes on wetland functioning; and the supply of ecosystem services and human well-being. This chapter reviews different analytical approaches used in the literature for establishing the linkages between ecological and economic systems and evaluating the impacts of alternative management and policy regimes on ecosystem functioning and economic well-being. The review will be used as the basis for choosing an analytical framework to adapt to this study.

# 5.2 Review of analytical approaches

Three main analytical approaches are used for evaluating the impacts of alternative management and policy regimes on ecosystem functioning and economic well-being in the literature. These are: economic valuation; multi-criteria analysis; and integrated ecological-economic models. These approaches are discussed in detail below.

### 5.2.1 Economic valuation

Ecosystems provide services that are of value to human welfare. The value of these services depends on the type of functions that are perceived as valuable to society. Only functions that provide services that satisfy a society's demands directly or indirectly have an economic value (Costanza *et al.*, 1989; Turner *et al.*, 2000).

The total economic value framework disaggregates the total economic value into use and non-use values (Figure 5.1). A use value refers to the value of ecosystem services that are used for human and production services. It includes the tangible ecosystems services that can be consumed directly (direct use values) as well as ecosystem



services that are intermediate inputs for production of final goods and services for human consumption (indirect use values), such as soil nutrients, water and biological support. A non-use value (also referred to as 'existence value' or 'option value') is the value that humans ascribe to ecosystems for preserving the option to use in future, despite the fact that they may not presently be deriving utility from them.

Economic valuation is an attempt to quantify the direct and indirect benefits from ecosystem services in monetary terms. It is aimed at providing a common metric in which to express the benefits of the diverse services provided by ecosystems (Barbier *et al.*, 1997). Valuation can be used in three main ways, according to Pagiola *et al.* (2004). The first is total valuation, which aims at estimating the total value of ecosystem services at a given time (e.g. for national income accounting or to determine its worth as a protected area). This type of valuation can provide useful information on the contribution of ecosystems to human welfare. Most of the wetland valuation studies conducted in southern Africa fall in this category (Seyam *et al.*, 2001; Schuyt, 1999).

It is believed that an improved awareness of the contribution of ecosystems to human welfare ensures that the values of ecosystems are better taken into account in decision making and can also be applied at the macroeconomic level for making adjustments to national income accounts. One limitation of this approach is that in most instances it is practically difficult to determine non-market ecosystem services. As a result, most of the valuation studies quantify few selected services.

Secondly, economic valuation can be used as a tool to examine the distribution of costs and benefits of ecosystem services among stakeholders. In this way, economic valuation allows for understanding of how different management interventions affect the poor and other stakeholders (i.e. equity considerations).



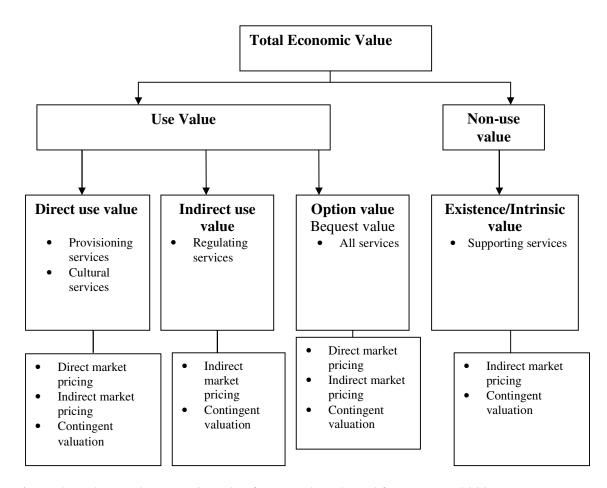


Figure 5.1: The Total Economic Value framework (Adapted from: MEA, 2003)

Thirdly, valuation can be used to evaluate the trade-offs between alternative ecosystem management regimes that alter ecosystems condition and the multiple services they provide. This approach focuses on assessing the impacts of alternative management and policy regimes on ecosystem services. This valuation approach is referred to as partial valuation (Barbier *et al.*, 1997). In this approach, the first step is to quantify the biophysical relationships of the impact of management alternatives on ecosystem functioning and how this affects the provision of ecosystem services. The second step is to apply valuation in the narrow sense, which monetarises ecosystem services using prices. This type of valuation is more relevant to policy since it quantifies the trade-offs among alternative uses of an ecosystem.

Economic valuation approaches can also be categorised into those that are static in nature and those that are dynamic. The former quantifies the value of ecosystem services at a single time period. It does not trace the effects of changes in ecosystem

condition and ecosystem services over time and thus assumes that ecological processes and ecosystem services are constant over time. Most of the wetland valuation work in Africa falls in this category mainly due to data limitations (e.g. Barbier *et al.*, 1991; Schuyt, 1999; Emerton *et al.*, 1999). In contrast, the dynamic approach takes into account the fact that changes in ecological functioning play out over time and result in changes in the supply of ecosystem services in the short, medium and long-term. Examples of the application of the dynamic approach to wetland ecosystems are studies by: Chopra and Adhikari (2004); Eppink *et al.* (2004); and Güneralp and Barlas (2003).

The Cost-Benefit Analysis (CBA) is the most widely used framework for valuing ecosystem services. The framework quantifies the costs and benefits of environmental services and enables quantification of trade-offs among ecosystem services. Under the CBA framework, there are several techniques that can be used to value ecosystem services. These can be classified into three broad categories: those that use directly observed market prices for valuation; those that use surrogate market prices for valuation; and those that use survey techniques for valuation<sup>11</sup>.

In the first category, valuation is based on direct (observed) market prices of goods and services (revealed preference methods). It includes techniques such as: change in value of direct output; the production function approach; the replacement cost approach; the damage cost avoided approach; and the defensive expenditure method. The second category of methods is based on surrogate markets, that is to say the market value of complementary and substitute goods in cases where the ecosystem service to be valued does not have an observed market price. Examples of valuation techniques which fall in this category include travel cost methods and hedonic pricing. Finally, survey techniques (stated preference methods) can be used to directly ask consumers to state their preferences regarding a non-marketed ecosystem service by presenting to them hypothetical scenarios. Valuation techniques under this category include: contingent valuation methods; conjoint analyses; and choice experiments. The different valuation techniques discussed here have been applied for

.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>11</sup> See Freeman (1993) for a detailed discussion of the different economic valuation techniques and Barbier *et al.* (1997) for a discussion on the application of valuation techniques to wetland ecosystems.



valuing wetland services in Africa (see Barbier et al., 1991; Schuyt, 1999; Turpie et al. 1999; Emerton et al. 1999).

Although the CBA approach has been applied extensively in valuing ecosystem services, the framework has a number of shortcomings. Apart from its significant data requirements, which affect the accuracy and reliability of results, the framework is primarily based on economic efficiency without considering the distribution of costs and benefits among stakeholders (Acreman, 2001; Gregory and Slovic, 1997). For this reason, other scholars recommend that the CBA needs to be complemented with measures other than economic efficiency to be able to guide decision making (Barbier *et al.* 1997).

# 5.2.2 Multi-criteria analysis

Considering the limitations of the CBA, some scholars have opted to use multicriteria analysis (MCA) to evaluate the alternative ecosystem management options based on multiple criteria such as: economic efficiency; environmental security; and equity (Barbier *et al.* 1997; Acreman, 2001; Brouwer and Van Ek, 2004). The MCA approach allows for comparing and ranking different management outcomes using multiple economic, environmental and social indicators. The actual measurement of indicators need not be in monetary terms, but are often based on scoring, ranking and weighting of a wide range of qualitative criteria.

The MCA approach, however, has its own shortcomings. The main shortcoming is related to the subjectivity of the choice of weights that are assigned to each objective. A common technique used to deal with this problem is to undertake a sensitivity analysis of outcomes with varying weights. For this reason, some scholars recommend introducing stakeholders' perceptions, derived from a stakeholder analysis to help in the weighting of different criteria.

The MCA and CBA should not be considered as parallel approaches. In some cases the two approaches complement each other (Brouwer and Van Ek, 2004; Tiwari *et al.* 1999). The MCA can also take the form of integrated disciplinary models, which take into account environmental security, economic value and distributional aspects.



# 5.2.3 Integrated ecological-economic models

Integrated ecological-economic models are used for evaluating ecological and economic impacts of alternative ecosystem management and policy regimes (Costanza and Ruth, 1998; Cox, 2005; Farber *et al.*, 2006). These models integrate various aspects of ecosystem functioning (e.g. hydrology), ecosystem services and their economic value. The models can be analytical or numerical and describe either steady-state or dynamic change. The models are most easily carried out at a local scale, where the interactions between elements in the system can be easily identified.

Turner *et al.* (2000) and Chopra and Adhikari (2004) highlighted that the impacts of management interventions on wetland functioning and human well-being can be better understood through the integrated modelling of ecological and economic processes of wetland systems and scenario analysis. In such models, economic valuation plays an intermediate role of expressing ecosystem services associated with the different management scenarios in monetary terms so that scenarios are comparable.

Two forms of integrated models are used in the literature for evaluating the impacts of alternative management and policy regimes on ecosystem functioning, the supply of ecosystem services and human well-being: modular or heuristic models; and system dynamics models (Turner *et al.* 2000; Ringler and Cai, 2003; Costanza and Ruth, 1998). These forms of models and examples of their applications are discussed in detail below.

### 5.2.3.1 Heuristic models

In these models, ecological and economic systems are constructed separately with output from one disciplinary model used as an input in another. In other words, the submodels operate independently with loose connections and no feedbacks between models.

A good example of the empirical application of this approach is provided by Van den Bergh *et al.* (2001) who developed spatially integrated economic, hydrological and

ecological models to analyse the impacts of alternative land use scenarios (housing, infrastructure, recreation, agriculture and nature conservation) on a wetland system in the Netherlands. Hydrological models were developed to simulate the impacts of these land use scenarios on the ground and surface water quantity and quality in the wetland. The outputs of the hydrological models were fed into an ecological model, which was used to estimate the effect of changes in water quality and quantity on the vegetation species' diversity. The net present value and environmental quality were the two aggregate performance indicators computed for each land use scenario and were later combined to form one welfare index on the basis of which land use options were compared.

The major advantage of heuristic models is that they allow for a detailed analysis of each of the components included in the model. However, by modelling ecological and economic systems separately the approach does not take into account the interactions and feedbacks between elements in the system.

# 5.2.3.2 System dynamics models

System dynamics models are based on systems theory, which was developed during the mid-1950s as an approach to understand the dynamic behaviour of complex systems (Forrester, 1968). This approach recognises that elements of complex systems are tightly interwoven into one system with direct interactions and feedbacks between them. It is on this premise that the system dynamics approach has also been referred to as the holistic approach (Brouwer and Hofkes, 2008).

What makes system dynamics models different from other modelling approaches used in studying complex systems is the use of stocks and flows. To take into account the links between the natural system and socio-economic system, the two systems are usually integrated as modules of models (Costanza *et al.* 1993). Difference equations are used to describe the dynamics of stocks in the system together with equations specifying relationships between flows (e.g. human consumption of ecosystem services) and other elements in the system. The totality of the model equations constitutes the structure of the model (or the system). It is essential in the system



dynamics methodology that the model structure provides a reasonable representation of the main interactions in the system being modelled.

Although the system dynamics framework was originally developed for understanding the dynamics of industrial processes, it has been widely applied in understanding the dynamic behaviour of ecosystems, particularly in evaluating the impacts of alternative management regimes on ecosystem functioning, ecosystem services' supply and human well-being.

For example, Van Beukering *et al.* (2003) developed and applied a system dynamics model to examine the economic consequences of alternative management options of a national park in Indonesia. They developed ecological and economic modules to predict the impacts of alternative management regimes on ecosystem functioning and ecosystem services provided by the national park. Three management regimes for the national park were considered: deforestation; conservation; and selective use. Selected ecosystem services were considered in the model, which are: water supply; fisheries; flood prevention; agriculture and plantation; hydroelectricity; timber and non-timber products; tourism; biodiversity; fire prevention; and carbon sequestration. The economic valuation module was used as an intermediate step in the modelling process to estimate the economic (monetary) value associated with each management option. The study found that conservation of the national park spreads the benefits of the national park equally among all stakeholders and therefore prevents potential social conflicts while deforestation widened the income gap between the rich and the poor.

In a study in the Brazilian Amazon forests, Portela and Rademacher (2001) used a dynamic simulation model to investigate the value of forest ecosystem services under farming and ranching uses. They developed a model with three modules: i) deforestation drivers module, which considered the socio-economic drivers of forest clearing; ii) the ecosystem services for quantifying the impacts of land use patterns on forest ecosystem services; and iii) ecosystem valuation module for calculating the economic value of changes in forest ecosystem services. The key forest ecosystem services considered in the model are: hydrological regulation; nutrient cycling; carbon sequestration; and species diversity. The losses in the value of ecosystem services due to different land use practices (farming and rangeland management) were compared to



the forest reference value, which was based on a global average value of forest ecosystems to find the net welfare impacts of land use practices. Portela and Rademacher (2001) showed that there are significant losses in the value of ecosystem services under farming and rangeland management regimes compared to the forest reference value.

Gambiza *et al.* (2000) examined the ecological and economic impacts of changing stock rates, tree removals, fire regimes and woodland structures for the Miombo woodland ecosystems of Zimbabwe. A dynamic simulation model with the following five interactive modules was developed: rainfall; grass production; fuel load; fire occurrence; and tree dynamics. The economic impacts of alternative woodland management regimes were explored by comparing the net present values accruing to the state authority that manages the forest and communal dwellers dependent on the forest under different management regimes (grazing pressure, high or reduced impact logging, varying proportion of harvestable timber cut). Their study concluded that the net present value to the state authority managing the forest remained constant under the different management regimes despite the marked ecological response.

Higgins *et al.* (1997) developed a dynamic simulation model to examine the value of ecosystem services provided by mountain *fynbos* ecosystems under alternative management regimes in South Africa. Three management regimes were considered: pristine management (uninvaded, no clearing required); present management (invaded, no alien clearing); and proactive management (invaded, intense clearing). Like the other studies discussed above, they divided their model into modules and used economic valuation as an intermediate step in the modelling process. Their model has five modules: hydrological; fire; plant; management; and economic valuation modules. The first three modules were used to quantify the impacts of management regimes on the *fynbos* ecosystem and the supply of selected ecosystem services while the economic valuation module estimated the value of the services under each management regime. By considering key ecosystem services provided by forests they were able to demonstrate that the costs of clearing invasive alien plants were a small proportion of the value of *fynbos* ecosystems services thus justifying an investment in clearing alien plants in *fynbos* ecosystems.



Application of system dynamics models to model dynamic behaviour of wetland ecosystems has recently gained prominence. For example, Chopra and Adhikari (2004) developed and applied an ecological-economic model to simulate effects of alternative regimes on ecological health and incomes derived from a wetland system in Northern India. Their model has three environmental modules which examine changes in three environmental variables that affect the ecological health of the wetland water, biomass and birds modules and a net income module, which sums up the impact of changes in each of the environmental modules on income derived from tourism and resource extraction. Upstream agricultural activities were assumed to cause pressures that affect stock of water and biodiversity (biomass and birds), which in turn determine the ecological health and hence amenity value of the wetland. The number of tourist visits to the wetland was considered to be a function of ecological health fir the wetland. The sensitivity of tourist visits to wetland ecological health indices were derived through simulation of scenarios with respect to future pressures on the wetland. The travel cost method was applied to estimate demand functions and consumer surplus accruing as welfare gain to tourists from amenity values derived from the wetland. They concluded that direct and indirect income obtained from the wetland is positively related to the ecological health of the wetland demonstrating a positive incentive to conserve the wetland.

Eppink *et al.* (2004) presented a general dynamic simulation model for analysing interactions between land use and wetland biodiversity. The model comprises of four modules: a land accounting module, which tracks changes in agricultural and urban land use; a biodiversity module describing the impacts of land use on biodiversity (measured in terms of species richness and evenness); a land use decision module describing the process that leads to decisions on urban expansion; and a social evaluation module in which social welfare is modelled as a function of income per capita, population density and wetland biodiversity was used to assess scenario outcomes. Using different scenarios for population, agricultural and urban growth, simulation experiments were performed to assess the effects of these scenarios on wetland biodiversity and social well-being. The study showed that there may be conflicts between urban growth and the conservation of wetland biodiversity.



Güneralp and Barlas (2003), working on a lake ecosystem in Turkey, developed and applied a system dynamics model to assess the impacts of different scenarios on ecosystem and economic activities. The objective of the model was to find a balance between improving the well-being of inhabitants living around the lake and maintaining ecological integrity of the lake ecosystem. They simulated dynamics of: ecological elements of the lake ecosystem; economic activities such as crop production, industrial activities and fishing; and the demographics of inhabitants in the study area. Their study concluded that there is no threat of a shift in algal dominance in the lake although there is potential for a decline in the welfare of inhabitants due to an increase in population.

In southern Africa, there is limited empirical work on evaluating the impacts of alternative management and policy regimes on wetland functioning, ecosystem services supply and human well-being. Apparently, one study by Turpie et al. (1999) attempted to assess the economic and ecological impacts of various management options of wetland systems in the Zambezi basin using a dynamic simulation model. Although the study does not give a detailed description of the model the information available shows that four management scenarios were simulated, which are: the maintenance of the status quo; implementing wise use practices; delimiting protected areas; and commercial agricultural development. The model integrated ecological submodels describing the impacts of management scenarios on wetland functioning and selected ecosystem services (fish, wild animals, palms, reeds and papyrus production, flood plain grazing and crop production) and an economic valuation module for estimating values of ecosystem services under each management scenario. Their results showed that the status quo management practices will result in reduced wetland benefits in future, while wise use practices maximise future wetland benefits to the community.

### 5.3 Approaches and methods of the study

This study adopts the system dynamics framework to establish the linkages between ecological and economic systems in the Ga-Mampa wetland area. This framework is chosen, because of its ability to take into consideration the feedback effects between ecological and economic systems and also its ability to capture the intertemporal



effects of interventions on ecosystem dynamics (Costanza et al. 1993; Costanza, 1996).

In developing the system dynamics model one can draw upon earlier studies on the systems modelling interactions between ecological and economic systems in wetland systems presented by Eppink *et al.* (2004); Güneralp and Barlas (2003) and Chopra and Adhikari (2004).

The adapted analytical framework is presented in Figure 5.2. The framework involves three steps: (i) evaluating the impacts of management scenarios on wetland ecosystem functioning; (ii) quantifying the effects of changes in ecosystem functioning on the supply of ecosystem services; and (iii) measuring the effects of the change in ecosystem services on human well-being. The bulk of the work involves quantifying the biophysical relationships along a causality chain. This involves integrating models from different disciplines.

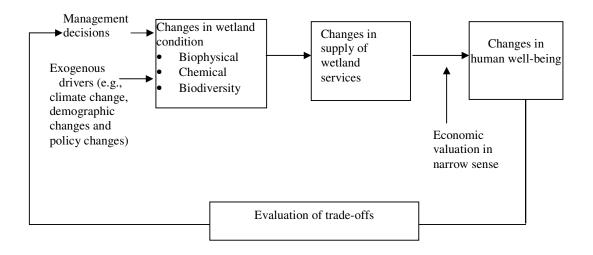


Figure 5.2: Analytical framework for evaluating the impacts of alternative wetland ecosystem management and policy regimes on ecosystem functioning, ecosystem services and human well-being (Adapted from: MEA, 2003)



# **5.4 Concluding Summary**

This chapter reviewed the main analytical approaches used for evaluating the impacts of alternative management and policy regimes on ecosystem functioning, the supply of ecosystem services and human well-being. The review showed that three main analytical approaches are used for this purpose, which are: economic valuation; multicriteria analysis; and integrated ecological-economic models (heuristic and systems dynamics models). Due to its ability to capture economic and ecological systems as integral components of one system and the feedbacks between them, the system dynamics approach in developing an ecological-economic model was chosen. The model is developed and applied to simulate the impacts of alternative management and policy scenarios in the next chapter.



### **CHAPTER 6**

# EMPIRICAL MODEL AND RESULTS FROM ANALYISIS OF THE IMPACTS OF ALTERNATIVE MANAGEMENT REGIMES ON WETLAND FUNCTIONING AND ECONOMIC WELL-BEING

### 6.1 Introduction

This chapter develops an empirical ecological-economic model for evaluating the impacts of alternative policy and management regimes on the wetland system and economic well-being. The first section of the chapter presents a generalised conceptual framework highlighting the main components in the system and their interactions. Section two discusses in detail the components of the empirical model and the assumptions behind their specification. The section that follows presents the entire system of the empirical model showing the linkages between ecological and economic systems and parameters used in the model. The fourth section validates the model. The model is then used to perform simulations of alternative wetland management and policy regimes the results of which are presented and discussed in the fifth section. A concluding summary of the chapter is presented at the end of the chapter.

### 6.2 Conceptual framework

This study attempts to develop an ecological-economic model based on the system dynamics framework. As highlighted in the previous chapter, the said framework takes into consideration feedback effects between ecological and economic systems as well as involved tradeoffs in the supply of individual constituents of the bundle of multiple services provided by wetlands. This framework also captures the intertemporal effects of interventions on ecosystem dynamics. In order to understand the ecological-economic interactions in the wetland system under study it is important to first identify the main components of the system and their interactions. The adapted framework consists of five subsystems: socio-economic; wetland hydrology; natural wetland vegetation; crop production; and land use change trade-offs. These subsystems are interlinked and changes in one subsystem impact on others with some

feedbacks among them (Figure 6.1). Crop production and livestock production as well as natural wetland vegetation subsystems are linked to the wetland hydrological module through changes in water use. Crop and livestock activities abstract water from the wetland thereby affecting the wetland system's hydrology and water budget. Water use on the other hand influences the productivity of crops, livestock and natural wetland vegetation, which in turn affects the economic welfare component of the socio-economic subsystem. Crops and natural wetland vegetation also influence the wetland water budget as they lose water through evapotranspiration.

Crop and livestock production and natural wetland vegetation subsystems are also interrelated through competition for land and labour resources. For example, conversion of the wetland for crop cultivation reduces the wetland area and consequently the availability of its natural products, including vegetation for livestock grazing. There are therefore trade-offs involved between these activities, which also require the use of labour and other inputs supplied by the communities and hence competition for these inputs.

A positive relationship between growth in biomass of natural wetland vegetation and wetland groundwater level links the natural wetland vegetation to the underlying hydrological system and captures the trade-offs between crop and wetland biomass production due to competition for water. For instance, as groundwater levels are lowered through wetland conversion to agriculture, natural wetland vegetation is adversely affected by competition with non-wetland plant species (Eppink *et al.* 2004). As biomass increases the actual growth rate is expected to decrease due to competition for limited resources (e.g. light, water, nutrients and space). This is also true the other way around, when biomass is removed from the wetland (e.g. through biomass harvesting) the actual growth rate will increase.

The economic welfare component of the system is influenced by benefits derived from exploiting the wetland ecosystem (i.e. crop, livestock and natural products as well as domestic water supply) and income derived from other sources (i.e. off-farm employment and social transfers). This socio-economic subsystem on the other hand supplies labour and other inputs for which various crop, livestock, natural product harvesting and off-farm activities compete.



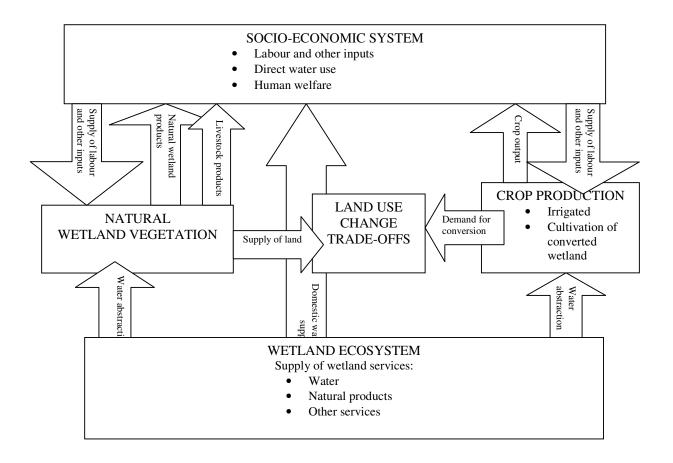


Figure 6.1: Conceptual framework showing the interactions between components of the system (Adapted from: Güneralp and Barlas, 2003)

# 6.3 The empirical model components and assumptions

Although the wetland system under study provides several direct services, crop production and natural products harvesting<sup>12</sup> are the most important services supporting the well-being of the population in the study area (Adekola, 2007). Therefore, this study's empirical model focuses on these two services. The model integrates five modules which are discussed in detail below.

<sup>12</sup> Livestock production and domestic water supply have been excluded from the empirical model due to lack of data for estimating livestock products and domestic water supply and input demand system.

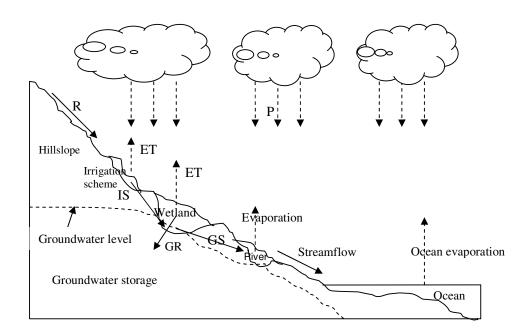


# 6.3.1 Hydrology module

Wetland hydrology is the primary driver of wetland ecosystem dynamics and many important functions of wetlands are directly linked to wetland hydrological processes (Eppink *et al.*, 2004; Zhang and Mitsch, 2005; Mitsch and Gosselink, 2000). The objective of this module is to assess the impacts of wetland uses (crop production and natural wetland vegetation products) on the wetland water budget. The module is modelled in just enough detail to reflect the fundamental system dynamics and have input-output exchanges with the other modules. Standard stock-flow equations are used to relate the different wetland water budget components including inflows, and outflows from the wetland, which are mainly groundwater recharge and discharge processes and their link to soil water.

This study's wetland hydrological system comprises of five linked sub-systems: the upper catchment; the hillslopes; the irrigation scheme; the wetland aquifer; and the river system. The wetland is fed primarily by recharge from precipitation and irrigation schemes and losses through the evapotranspiration of crops and natural vegetation and seepage from the wetland to the river (Masiyandima *et al.*, 2006).





Where: P is precipitation; IS refers to irrigation scheme seepage; GS is groundwater seepage from the wetland to the river; GR is recharge from wetland soil to groundwater; R is surface runoff; and ET refers to evapotranspiration losses.

Figure 6.2: Schematic representation of the main hydrological fluxes of the wetland (Adapted from: Bullock and Acreman, 2003)

The main surface flow through the wetland is the river, which passes through the edge of the wetland. The river inflow is influenced mainly by runoff generated in the catchment upstream. Although the bare soils in the wetland can generate significant runoff this is assumed to be minimal, as water infiltrates into the wetland due to the high permeability of peat soils in the wetland (McCartney, 2005).

Although it is believed that the lateral flow of groundwater from the hillslopes contributes to wetland recharge through seepage, this has not been validated through an empirical analysis. Therefore, this component is not included in the model. Discharge of wetland groundwater occurs through outflow of groundwater from the wetland to the river through seepage. The discharge of groundwater from the wetland is also influenced by artificial drainage activities as farmers drain groundwater from wetland plots to lower the water table and increase crop yields. In the studied wetland,



5% of the wetland represents the open drain area and much of the drained water is lost through evaporation before reaching the river system. However, to simplify the model and also due to lack of data, artificial drainage was not considered in the model.

In addition to groundwater seepage from the wetland to the river, wetland groundwater level is also influenced by groundwater recharge from saturated wetland soils (GR) and recharge from irrigation (IS). Recharge from wetland soils is influenced by soil moisture dynamics, which are in turn influenced by rainfall and evapotranspiration. Upstream of the wetland is a water diversion for the irrigation scheme on the perimeter of the wetland. The diversion from the river is channelled to the irrigated fields via a primary canal and several secondary canals, all of which leak severely. A principal canal transports water to the primary and secondary canals, which then feeds into the fields.

It is assumed that some water seepage from the irrigation area into the wetland groundwater storage occurs, recharging the wetland. The volume of diverted irrigated water for irrigation depends on the geometry of the canal as well as the water level in the weir. The canal's capacity is 130 litres per second (I/s). An estimated 94% of the diverted water is lost through seepage in the network of canals from the primary to field canals leaving only 6% available for crops (Chiron, 2005). It was assumed that the seepage losses from irrigated area recharge wetland groundwater.

Crop and natural vegetation evapotranspiration is the major component of water loss from the studied wetland system<sup>13</sup> (McCartney, 2005). Evapotranspiration consists of actual evapotranspiration from natural vegetation ( $ETv_t^i$ ) and actual crop evapotranspiration from cultivated area ( $ETc_t^i$ ). Therefore, the total evapotranspiration ( $ET_t^i$ ) is given by the following equation:

$$ET_{t}^{i} = ETc_{t}^{i} + ETv_{t}^{i}$$

$$ETc_{t}^{i} = ET_{at}^{i} * AC_{t}^{i}$$
(6.1)

BESTPFE.COM
List of research project topics and materials

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>13</sup> Abstraction of water for domestic uses and watering of livestock is limited.



Where i refers to the two systems: irrigation; or wetland system that is to say i(r,w).  $ET_{a,t}^{i}$  is actual evapotranspiration per hectare of cultivated area in system i at the time period t (mm/ha) and  $AC_{1}^{i}$  is the area cultivated in system i (ha) at the time period t.

Equation 6.1 is only true for the wetland since there is no natural vegetation in the irrigation system. Also, since our primary interest is to model the hydrological dynamics in the wetland system, equations 6.2-6.4 focus on the wetland system (i.e. i = w = wetland system). For the wetland system, the rate of evapotranspiration from natural vegetation varies with every season and is as high as 5mm per day during the rainy season and is approximately 1mm to 2mm per day during the winter season (Dye *et al.* 2008; Von der Heyden and New, 2003; Kleynhans, 2004). Using these values, it is assumed that actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation (ETv<sup>w</sup>) is approximately 1100mm per unit area of wetland per year. Thus, evapotranspiration from natural vegetation in the wetland system is given by the following equation:

$$ETv_t^w = \eta * TA_t^w \qquad w = \text{wetland system}$$
 (6.2)

Where  $\eta$  is a parameter showing the rate of evapotranspiration from natural vegetation per hectare per year and  $TA_{\tau}^{w}$  refers to the total wetland area.

For the area cultivated in the wetland system, we considered that recharge to groundwater occurs when the water content of the root zone is above field capacity. The water holding capacity for the type of soil texture found in the study area ranges from 140mm to 170mm per metre of soil depth (Saxton and Rawls, 2006). Therefore, we assume that the field capacity of the soil is 140mm.

Given the earlier description of the wetland hydrological system and the fact that runoff is limited in the wetland, the soil moisture content in the root zone can be expressed as a water balance equation as follows:

$$MC_{t+1} - MC_t = P_t + CR_t - GR_t - ET_t^w$$
 (6.3)



w = wetland system

Where MC, and CR, refer to soil moisture content and capillary rise from the shallow groundwater, respectively.

The wetland hydrological fluxes discussed above impact on the wetland groundwater level through recharge and discharge processes. The equation for the change in the wetland groundwater level is given by<sup>14</sup>:

$$GWL_{t+1} = GWL_{t} + [GR_{t} + IS_{t} - GS_{t} - CR_{t}]/10^{3}$$
(6.4a)

Where GWL, wetland is groundwater level (in metres) and the other variables are as defined earlier.

Since recharge to groundwater from saturated wetland soils is assumed to occur only if the soil water content is above field capacity, groundwater recharge from wetland soils is modelled using a logical if-then-else statement as follows<sup>15</sup>:

$$GR = If (MC_{t} + P_{t} + CR_{t} - ET_{t}^{w} > WHC) then (MC_{t} + P_{t} + CR_{t} - ET_{t}^{w} - WHC) * (AC_{t}^{w}/120) else 0$$
(6.4b)

Where WHC is a parameter for the water holding capacity of the wetland soil.

The hydrological components GS, , IS, , and CR, were also modelled using: if-thenelse logical statements; the information known about these processes at the study sites; and reasonable assumptions where necessary and these are presented in Appendix A2.

<sup>14</sup> We divide the expression by 10<sup>3</sup> to convert it from millimetres to metres since the wetland

groundwater level (GWL) is measured in metres.

To take into account the relative area of wetland and cultivated wetland, groundwater recharge is weighted by the proportion of wetland under cultivation  $AC_t^w/120 = (1 - TA_t^w/120)$ 



# 6.3.2 Crop production module

This module assesses grain dynamics and their link to the other modules. Based on the grain supply function specified in equation 4.1, grain supply is a function of socioeconomic variables. The parameter estimates for the grain supply function are presented in Chapter 4 (Table 4.5).

The crop production module is linked to the hydrology module through crop water use. Crops abstract water from the wetland thereby affecting the hydrology of the wetland, and in turn crop water use influences crop yields. To estimate crop water use we employ a linear crop yield-water response function based on the CROPWAT model developed by FAO (Doorenbos and Kassam, 1979) and widely applied in estimating crop water use (e.g. Igbadun *et al.*, 2007; Raes *et al.*, 2006; Ringler and Cai, 2003).

The model is specified as:

$$Y_{a,t}^{i} = Y_{m}^{i} \left[ 1 - k_{v} * \left( 1 - ET_{a,t}^{i} / ET_{m,t}^{i} \right) \right]$$
 (6.5)

Where: i, represents a wetland or irrigation system;  $Y_{a,t} = \text{actual yield (tonnes/ha)}$  at the time period t;  $Y_m = \text{maximum yield (tonnes/ha)}$ ;  $ET_{a,t} = \text{actual crop}$  evapotranspiration per hectare over the cropping season (mm/ha);  $ET_{m,t} = \text{maximum}$  crop evapotranspiration over the cropping season (mm); and  $k_y = \text{crop yield response}$  factor

To link the crop yield-water response function (equation 6.5) and the grain supply function specified in the agricultural household model of Chapter 4 with the slope parameter adjusted with the average values of the variables of household characteristics (equation 4.1) a two-step process is followed. First, the grain supply and the area cultivated are aggregated across all households in irrigated and wetland systems to get a total grain supply  $(TG_t^i)$  and total area cultivated in system i  $(AC_t^i)$  as follows:



$$TG_{t}^{i} = \left(\sum_{q=1}^{Q_{i}} G_{q,t}^{i} / 10^{3}\right)$$
 (6.6a)

$$AC_t^i = \sum_{q=1}^{Q_i} A_{q,t}^i$$

Where:  $G_{q,t}^i$  is grain supply per household in system (in kgs);  $A_{q,t}^i$  is the area cultivated per household in system i at the time period t (in ha); and q is the number of households in system i where total households in that system ranges from 1 to Q.

The number of households in the irrigation system  $(Q_r)$  is constant (see Table 6.4) while the number of households cultivating in the wetland system  $(Q_w)$  is computed by dividing the total wetland area under cultivation by the cultivated wetland area per household. Therefore, the equation for  $Q_w$  is given as:

$$Q_{w} = AC_{t}^{w} / wc_{0}$$

$$(6.6b)$$

Where  $AC_t^w$  is the total wetland area under cultivation and  $wc_0$  is the cultivated wetland area per household.

The second step computes average yield in system i (  $Y_a^i$  ) as:

$$Y_{a,t}^{i} = TG_{t}^{i}/AC_{t}^{i}$$

$$(6.7)$$

The average yield is substituted for actual yield ( $Y_a$ ) in equation 6.5 to solve for  $ET_a^i$  (this corresponds to crop water use per hectare in system i).

The parameters used to solve  $ET_{a,t}^i$  using equation 6.5 are given in Table 6.1. Values for parameters  $k_y$  and  $ET_m$  were taken from the work of Durand (2008) on crop water use for the 19 water management areas in South Africa based on the CROPWAT

model. Values of  $Y_m$  in the irrigated and wetland area were obtained from the work done in the study area by Chiron (2005).

Table 6.1 Parameters used in the CROPWAT model for maize grain

	Wetland	Irrigation
k <sub>y</sub> (a)	1.25	1.25
$Y_{m}$ (b)	3	2.5
ET <sub>m</sub> (a)	490	490

Sources: (a) Durand (2008); (b) Chiron (2005)

It is assumed that the demand levels for local production and agricultural input are too small to influence market prices, therefore crop output and input prices are considered exogenous. The producer price series of grain, derived from national statistics (Department of Agriculture, 2009) and local observations in 2006 were used for valuing maize output<sup>16</sup>.

Two inputs are considered in the specification of the grain supply system: water and labour. Crop water use (which corresponds to  $ET_a$  calculated from equation 6.5) is used as the proxy for quantity of water used in wetland grain production. As the actual quantity of water used for irrigated maize production is difficult to determine since the irrigation system in the study area uses gravity to convey water directly from the river into the fields through canals the  $ET_a$  for maize grain under irrigation is used as an alternative.

Since rainwater is not supplied by an economic agent at a cost, the price of water used in wetland maize grain production does not exist. We accordingly used water tariff figures for agricultural water in South Africa for 2009 to attach a cost to water. Although, there are other costs related to labour for canalisation for irrigated crops, these were not included due to data limitations. In addition, water losses due to the low efficiency of water distribution systems from river to irrigation plots was not accounted for in the model.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>16</sup> All production is valued irrespective of whether it is self-consumed, sold or retained.



The labour costs associated with grain production are calculated based on the labour demand for grain production given in Chapter 4 (equation 4.2 of the agricultural household model with the slope parameter adjusted with the average values of the variables of household characteristics) the parameters of which are presented in Table 4.5. The net value of grain ( $R_t$ ), which links this module to the human well-being module is calculated using the following equation:

$$R_{t} = P_{G,t} \sum_{i} (Y_{a,t}^{i} A C_{t}^{i}) - P_{W,t} \sum_{i} (E T_{a}^{i} A C_{t}^{i}) - W_{t} * L_{G,t} * \sum_{i} Q_{i}$$
(6.8)

Where:  $P_{G,t}$  is the price of grain at the time period t (Rand/tonne);  $P_{W,t}$  is the price of water at the time period t (Rand/mm);  $W_t$  is the wage rate (Rands/hour);  $L_{G,t}$  is the labour time used in grain production per household in the time period t (hours/household/year) and  $Q_i$  is the total number of households in system i.

# 6.3.3 Land use change module

This module captures the dynamics in the area cultivated with grains in the wetland and under irrigation. Three land use systems are present in the area under study: irrigated area; natural wetland area; and area of wetland converted to crop production. Based on information from key informant interviews in the study area, the irrigated area is assumed to be constant over time and is estimated to be equal to 170 ha (Chiron, 2005). However, the area of wetland converted to cultivation grows over time whereas the natural wetland area is cleared for crop production causing the total wetland area to decline.

Therefore, the dynamics of the total wetland area are modelled using the following equation:

$$TA_{t+1}^{w} = TA_{t}^{w} - WCA_{t}$$

$$(6.9)$$

Where  $TA_t^w$  represents the total wetland area and  $WCA_t$  is the area of wetland converted to cultivation in time period t.

Based on focus group discussions conducted in the study area, it is assumed that changes in the total area of wetland under cultivation are a function of three sets of factors: (i) the changes in population, which increase consumption, demand for food grain; (ii) crop output prices and input prices, which provide incentives (or disincentive) to convert the wetland to crop production; and (iii) a decline in annual precipitation, which results in new farmers moving into the wetland to cultivate because of its ability to retain soil moisture throughout the year. To predict the effect of these factors (precipitation, agricultural prices for output and inputs and population) on the total wetland area under cultivation (  $AC_t^w$  ) we fitted historical annual time series data for these variables on area of wetland cultivated in the past, using a multiple regression analysis<sup>17</sup>. As the population in the study area is only known for the year 2006, we used the district average annual population growth of 1.7% (Statistics South Africa, 2004) to extrapolate the population for additional years corresponding to the periods for which historical data on the area of wetland under cultivation is available and use that for the regression estimation.

The regression equation for area of wetland under cultivation in period t is given by:

$$AC_{t}^{w} = a_{1}P_{t} + a_{2}P_{G,t} + a_{3}P_{Y,t} + a_{4}Pop_{t}$$
(6.10a)

Where:  $a_1$ ,  $a_2$ ,  $a_3$  and  $a_4$  are parameters; and  $P_t$ ,  $P_G$ ,  $P_Y$  and  $Pop_t$  represent precipitation, price of grain, price of agricultural input and population at time period t, respectively.

Thus the area of wetland converted to cultivation in period t (WCA, ) is given by the following equation:

$$AC_{t+1}^{w} - AC_{t} = WCA_{t}$$

$$(6.10b)$$

The Consumer Price Index, which we use as the proxy for the price of market goods as will be explained later, was excluded from the regression due to its high collinearity with the price of agricultural inputs. As discussed in Chapter 4, the price of maize seed is used as the proxy for the price of agricultural inputs as this is the main input cost in grain production.



The initial value of the total area of wetland under cultivation starting in year 1990 was set up in such a way as to reach the levels in 2006 that were estimated to be 66 ha (Adekola, 2007).

# **6.3.4** Natural wetland vegetation module

This module describes the dynamics of wetland natural biomass. Due to limited data on the study site, the formulation of this module relied mainly on literature. Reeds (*Phragmites australis* and *Phragmites mauritanus*) are the major constituents of biomass in the studied wetland system (Kotze, 2005). Following Hellden (2008), a simplified S-shaped growth curve (logistic growth function) is employed to model biomass growth dynamics. Biomass per hectare of wetland area is specified by the following equation:

$$B_{t+1} = B_t (1 + r_t) \tag{6.11}$$

Where  $B_t$  is biomass per hectare at time period t (tons/ha) and  $r_t$  is the actual growth rate of biomass stock at time period t.

Wetland biomass per hectare was set to a maximum of 70 tons per annum, which is the maximum annual productivity of reeds or carrying capacity (Finlayson and Moser, 1991 cited in Turpie *et al.* 1999). One can expect that as biomass increases the actual growth rate decreases due to competition for limited resources (e.g. light, water, nutrients and space). This is also true the other way around, when biomass is removed from the wetland (e.g. through biomass harvesting) the actual growth rate will increase. To capture the changes in actual growth rate as biomass stock changes we multiply the intrinsic growth rate by a density dependent factor (or growth rate multiplier) in computing the actual growth rate. Thenya (2006) estimated that the annual intrinsic growth rate ( $s_0$ ) of wetland *phragmites* species (common reeds) can be as high as 300% after harvest during the rainy season. We assume a very moderate estimate for the intrinsic growth rate of 0.3. This rate applies when there are no limitations to biomass growth.



However, to capture the limitations caused by competition for resources as biomass stock grows, the intrinsic rate is adjusted by the growth rate multiplier. The growth rate multiplier is equal to 1 (100%) when biomass stock is close to zero and the rate decreases to close to zero when biomass stock is in full growth and is reaching carrying capacity. Thus, the growth rate multiplier is negatively related to the ratio of biomass stock in each time period to the carrying capacity (which is set at the maximum biomass per hectare). This is modelled as a graphical relationship based on the work of Hellden (2008). Following this work, the growth rate multiplier is a graphical function of the following form:

$$\sigma_{t} = GRAPH(B_{t}/k_{B}); 0 < \sigma_{t} < 1$$
(6.12)

Where  $\sigma_t$  is the growth rate multiplier,  $k_B$  is carrying capacity and  $B_t$  is biomass per hectare at time period t (tons/ha), as defined earlier.

Although little is known on the effects of water regimes or the productivity of wetland plant species, changes in wetland groundwater are bound to affect wetland biomass production. For instance, as the groundwater level is lowered through the wetland's conversion to agriculture, wetland vegetation is adversely affected and loses the competitive struggle with non-wetland plant species (Eppink *et al.* 2004). Therefore, the actual growth rate of biomass is linked to changes in wetland groundwater level in a linear form. This relationship links this module to the hydrology module and captures the trade-offs between crop production and wetland natural resources production due to competition for water. Given that there is very limited literature on the relationship between the below ground groundwater level and biomass growth, the above ground water depth-reeds growth correlations done by Tarr *et al.* (2004) is relied upon to obtain a gross parameter estimate on the wetland groundwater level effects on biomass growth.

Therefore, the actual growth rate is given by:

$$r_{t} = s_{0} * \sigma_{t} + \mu_{t} GWL_{t}$$

$$(6.13)$$



Where  $s_0$  is the intrinsic growth rate,  $\mu_1$  is a parameter,  $\sigma_t$  is the growth rate multiplier and GWL is the wetland groundwater level as defined earlier.

Total biomass stock ( $TB_t$ ) (measured in tons) is calculated as a product of biomass per hectare ( $B_t$ ) and wetland area ( $TA_t^w$ ) minus quantity of biomass harvested ( $h_t$ ):

$$TB_t = TA_t^w * B_t - h_t$$
  $w = \text{wetland system}$  (6.14)

The quantity of biomass harvested ( $h_t$ ) is a product of the reduced form household biomass supply function ( $X_H^H$ ) (measured in tons per household per year) which is derived from an agricultural household model in equation 4.1 in Chapter 4 with the slope parameter adjusted with the average values of the variables of household characteristics and the number of biomass harvesting households ( $NH_t$ ):

$$h_{t} = NH_{t} * X_{H}^{H}$$
 (6.15)

The number of biomass harvesting households varies over time and is influenced by the total biomass stock. It is assumed that the number of households that harvest households is positively related to the total biomass stock. For as the total biomass stock declines, so does the number of households that harvest biomass and the efforts required to meet the required biomass needs, increases. As time series data on the total biomass stock for the study area does not exist, the author resorted to fitting historical annual time series data on the natural wetland area (which is used as a proxy for total biomass stock) and the number of wetland harvesting households using a simple linear regression in order to estimate the parameter (c). The relationship between the number of biomass harvesting households and the total wetland area is given by the following equation:

$$NH_{t} = c * TA_{t}^{w}$$

$$(6.16)$$

Where c is a parameter.





Given that the actual number of wetland biomass harvesting households is known for the survey year, the other years we extapolated by assuming that it is 24% of the total number of households (which is the proportion of households engaged in harvesting obtained from the survey). As the wetland area is used as a proxy for wetland biomass, the parameter c was adjusted to take into account the average biomass per hectare.

The biomass supply function is influenced by several exogenous factors as shown in equation 4.1 in chapter 4. The labour used in biomass harvesting (equation 4.2 with the slope parameter adjusted with the average values of the variables of household characteristics) is used to compute the labour costs incurred in biomass harvesting. The labour cost function for biomass harvesting (b, ) is given as:

$$b_{t} = W_{t} * L_{H} * NH_{t}$$
 (6.17)

Where  $L_{\rm H}$  is the labour used in biomass harvesting, measured in hours per harvesting household per year.

Therefore, the net value of biomass harvested (V<sub>t</sub>) is given by:

$$V_{t} = h_{t} * P_{H,t} - b_{t}$$
 (6.18)

 $P_{\mathrm{H},\mathrm{t}}$  is the market price of harvested biomass at time period t.

# 6.3.5 The economic well-being module

This module deals with the welfare of the human population in the study area, which influences the demand for grain and wetland natural products for their own consumption and sales for cash income. Communities living in the area also supply labour for these activities. Following Woodwell (1998) and Hellden (2008) this study used an exponential population growth function where population growth is assumed to vary with natural growth rate, g (birth and death rate) and out-migration (EM $_{\rm t}$ ). Although both death rate and birth rate are dependent on a number of factors (e.g.

family policies, access to markets and health services,) these are not considered in the model. However, it is assumed that emigration rates (e<sub>t</sub>) vary over time and are influenced by the availability of off-farm employment opportunities (the proxy for this is GDP per capita) and rainfall. Low rainfall reduces agricultural productivity, which results in more people migrating to urban areas to seek off-farm income opportunities to cushion themselves from income shocks. Therefore, the population in the study area is linked to GDP per capita and rainfall through the emigration rate equation (equation 6.21).

The initial population was set in such a way as to reach the population levels of the study area in 2006 that were estimated to be approximately 2700 people (Adekola, 2007). The average annual population growth rate for the area is set at the district average which is estimated at 1.7% (Statistics South Africa, 2004). Focus group discussions conducted in the study area showed that immigration (in-migration) is minimal and therefore we assume that there is no in-migration in the area so the immigration rate is set at zero.

Therefore, the population dynamics are given by:

$$Pop_{t+1} = Pop_{t}(1+g) - EM_{t}$$
 (6.19)

Where  $Pop_t$  is as defined earlier, g is the natural population growth rate and  $EM_t$  is the number of emigrants at time t

The number of emigrants is estimated using the following equation:

$$EM_{t} = e_{t} * Pop_{t}$$
 (6.20)

Where  $e_t$  is the emigration rate.

The equation for emigration rate is specified as follows:

$$e_{t} = f_{0} + f_{1}GDP_{k,t} + f_{2}P_{t}$$
(6.21)



Where  $f_0$ ,  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  are parameters;  $GDP_k$  and  $P_t$  represent GDP per capita and precipitation, respectively.

The parameters for equation 6.21 were derived from estimating a regression of historical emigration rates. These rates were for a typical rural area in South Africa for the midpoint years of a five-year period given by Kok and Collison (2006) with national the GDP per capita figures and the annual rainfall data corresponding to these years for the area.

In each given period, population determines the total labour supply and hence the total available labour (LS<sub>1</sub>) (measured in hours per year) is specified as follows:

$$LS_{t} = (\kappa_{1}m_{1} + \kappa_{2}m_{2})*Pop_{t}$$

$$(6.22)$$

Where  $\kappa_1$  and  $\kappa_2$  are parameters representing the proportion of adults and children in the population, respectively;  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  are also parameters representing the total labour supply per adult and child, respectively (measured in hours/person/year).

Labour demand (LD<sub>t</sub>) is given by summing the labour demand for each of the livelihood activities taking into account the number of households involved in each of the activities:

$$LD_{t} = L_{o,t} * NO_{t} + L_{H,t} * NH_{t} + L_{G,t} * \sum_{i} Q_{i}$$
(6.23)

Where  $L_o$ ,  $L_H$  and  $L_G$  represent the labour used in off-farm work, biomass harvesting and grain production (measured in hours/household/year), respectively;  $NO_t$  and  $NH_t$  represent the number of households engaged in off-farm work and biomass harvesting, respectively.



It is assumed that labour is free to move between the different livelihood activities. Thus, the market clearing condition was imposed to solve the equilibrium wage rate as follows:

$$LS_{t} = LD_{t} + L_{zt} * TH_{t}$$

$$(6.24a)$$

Where  $L_{z,t}$  represents the labour time used in leisure (hours per household per year) and  $TH_{t}$  the total number of households.

The total number of households  $(TH_t)$  is equal to the population divided by the average household size  $(hs_0)$ :

$$TH_{t} = Pop_{t}/hs_{0} \tag{6.24b}$$

This module also derives the value of services of the wetland ecosystem and income from different sources. Four main forms of income are considered in the model: the net value of grain production; the net value of biomass harvested; off-farm wage income; and exogenous income (income from government social grants)<sup>18</sup>. The net values of grain and biomass harvested are shown by equations 6.8 and 6.18, respectively.

Off-farm wage income is a function of labour time used in off-farm work and the wage rate. The labour time used in off-farm work per household ( $L_{\rm o}$ ) (in hours/household/year) is also a function of exogenous factors as shown in equation 4.2 in chapter 4.

Therefore, the off-farm income function (O<sub>t</sub>) is specified as:

$$O_{t} = NO_{t} * W_{t} * L_{o,t}$$

$$(6.25)$$

Where NO<sub>t</sub> is the number of households engaged in off-farm work.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>18</sup> Crop income and natural resource income gives the net value of all productions and harvested biomass at market prices including productions or harvests sold, consumed and retained.



The number of households engaged in off-farm work assumedly changes over time and is influenced by national economic performances measured in terms of GDP per capita (which is used as a proxy for availability of off-farm employment opportunities). Historical employment figures from ward level census data in the study area and the national GDP per capita figures were used for a regression analysis to establish the relationship between the number of households engaged in off-farm work and the GDP per capita. The equation for NO<sub>1</sub> is given by:

$$NO_{t} = d_{0} + d_{1}GDP_{k}$$
 (6.26)

Where  $d_0$  and  $d_1$  are parameters and GDP<sub>k</sub> is GDP per capita.

The main form of exogenous income in the study area is government transfers through child grants given for children under the age of 14. The equation for exogenous income (social transfers) ( $E_1$ ) is specified as:

$$E_t = Z_t * NS_t \tag{6.27}$$

Where  $z_t$  is the social grant rate (Rand/beneficiary/year) and  $NS_t$  is the number of households that benefit from social grants.

The National Treasury of South Africa (2008) highlighted that the social grant rate has been increasing over the years in line with inflation, mainly to protect its purchasing power. Based on this observation, the author assumes that the social grant rate is a function of the consumer price index (CPI) and used historical social grants rates and CPI values to regress these two variables and find parameters for their relationship. The social grant rate can be expressed as:

$$z_t = k_0 + k_1 CPI_t \tag{6.28a}$$

Where  $k_0$  and  $k_1$  are parameters and CPI is the consumer price index.



The number of households benefiting from social grants  $(NS_t)$  is assumed to be a proportion of the total number of households at each time period and is given by the following relationship:

$$NS_t = n_0 * TH_t \tag{6.28b}$$

Where  $n_0$  is a parameter.

The total net income for the population in time period t,  $NI_t$ , is the summation of income derived from off-farm wage work, exogenous sources (social grants) and net value of maize production and biomass harvested:

$$NI_{t} = R_{t} + V_{t} + O_{t} + E_{t}$$
 (6.29)

It is assumed that the economic well-being of the targeted population in time t measured as net income per capita  $(SW_t)$  is a function of total net income such that the economic well-being function is given by:

$$SW_{t} = \frac{NI_{t}}{Pop_{t}}$$
 (6.30)

The net income per capita is the measure (index) of economic well-being that is used to assess scenario outcomes.

# 6.4 The full system of equations showing the linkages between modelled ecological-economic systems

In order to clearly show the linkages between economic and ecological processes in the system being modeled we present the full system of equations and the model variables to solve for endogenously are defined in Table 6.2. The model is specified



and solved in STELLA<sup>19</sup>, a simulation software which is well suited for simulating dynamics of ecological-economic systems (Costanza and Gottlieb, 1998). The model is run on an annual time step.

# (A) Hydrology module

Total evapotranspiration (mm): 
$$(i = r, w) ET_t^i = ETc_t^i + ETv_t^i$$
 (6.1)

Actual crop evapotranspiration from cultivated area (mm):  $ETc_t^i = ET_{at}^i * AC_t^i$ 

Actual evapotranspiration from natural vegetation (mm):  $ETv_t^w = \eta * TA_t^w$ 

(6.2)

Soil moisture content (w = wetland) (mm):  $MC_{t+1} - MC_t = P_t + CR_t - GR_t - ET_t^w$ 

Wetland groundwater level (m): 
$$GWL_{t+1} = GWL_t + [GR_t + IS_t - GS_t - CR_t]/10^3$$
(6.4a)

Groundwater recharge from wetland soils (mm):

$$GR = If (MC_{t} + P_{t} + CR_{t} - ET_{t}^{w} > WHC) then (MC_{t} + P_{t} + CR_{t} - ET_{t}^{w} - WHC) * (AC_{t}^{w}/120) else 0$$
(6.4b)

# (B) Crop production module

Actual crop yield (tons/ha): 
$$Y_a^i = Y_m^i \left[1 - k_y * \left(1 - ET_a^i / ET_m^i\right)\right]$$
 (6.5)

Household grain supply function (kg/household/year):

$$G_{q,t} = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 E_t + \alpha_2 W_t + \alpha_3 P_{G,t} + \alpha_4 P_{H,t} + \alpha_5 P_{M,t} + \alpha_6 P_{Y,t}$$
(4.1)

Household labour used in grain production (hours/household/year):

$$L_{G,t} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 E_t + \beta_2 W_t + \beta_3 P_{G,t} + \beta_4 P_{H,t} + \beta_5 P_{M,t} + \beta_6 P_{Y,t}$$
(4.2)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>19</sup> The software requires that the variables in the system are categorised into stocks (state variables), flows (rate of change of stock variables) and converters (intermediate variables used for miscellaneous calculations). The linkages between these through difference equations represent the links between the ecological and economic components in the integrated model. The model state variables are presented in Table 6.3.



Total grain supply (tons):

$$TG_{t}^{i} = \left(\sum_{q=1}^{Q_{i}} G_{q,t}^{i} / 10^{3}\right)$$
 (6.6a)

Total area cultivated (ha):

$$AC_t^i = \sum_{q=1}^{Q_i} A_{q,t}^i$$

Households cultivating the wetland system:  $Q_w = AC_t^w / wc_0$  (6.6b)

Average yield (tons/ha): 
$$Y_{a,t}^i = TG_t^i / AC_t^i$$
 (6.7)

Net value of grain (Rands):

$$R_{t} = P_{G,t} \sum_{i} (Y_{a,t}^{i} A C_{t}^{i}) - P_{W,t} \sum_{i} (E T_{a}^{i} A C_{t}^{i}) - W_{t} * L_{G,t} * \sum_{i} Q_{i}$$
(6.8)

# (C) Land use change module

Total wetland area (ha): 
$$TA_{t+1}^{w} = TA_{t}^{w} - WCA_{t}$$
 (6.9)

Total area of wetland under cultivation (ha):  $AC_t^w = a_1P_t + a_2P_{G,t} + a_3P_{Y,t} + a_4Pop_t$ (6.10a)

Area of wetland converted to cultivation (ha):

$$AC_{t+1}^{w} - AC_{t} = WCA_{t}$$

$$(6.10b)$$

# (D) Natural wetland vegetation module

Biomass per hectare (tons/ha): 
$$B_{t+1} = B_t (1+r_t)$$
 (6.11)

Growth rate multiplier: 
$$\sigma_t = GRAPH(B_t/k_B)$$
;  $0 < \sigma_t < 1$  (6.12)

Actual growth rate: 
$$r_t = s_0 * \sigma_t + \mu_1 GWL_t$$
 (6.13)

Total biomass stock (tons): 
$$TB_{t} = TA_{t}^{w} * B_{t} - h_{t}$$
 (6.14)

Total biomass harvested (tons): 
$$h_t = NH_t * X_{H,t}^H$$
 (6.15)

Number of biomass harvesting households: 
$$NH_t = c * TA_t^w$$
 (6.16)



Household biomass supply function (tons/household/year):

$$X_{H,t}^{H} = \theta_{0} + \theta_{1}E_{t} + \theta_{2}W_{t} + \theta_{3}P_{G,t} + \theta_{4}P_{H,t} + \theta_{5}P_{M,t} + \theta_{6}P_{Y,t}$$
(4.1)

Labour cost for biomass harvesting (Rands):

$$b_{t} = W_{t} * L_{H,t} * NH_{t}$$
 (6.17)

Household labour used in biomass harvesting (hours/household/ year):

$$L_{H,t} = \rho_0 + \rho_1 E_t + \rho_2 W_t + \rho_3 P_{G,t} + \rho_4 P_{H,t} + \rho_5 P_{M,t} + \rho_6 P_{Y,t}$$
(4.2)

Net value of harvested biomass (Rands):

$$V_{t} = h_{t} * P_{H,t} - b_{t}$$
 (6.18)

# (E) Economic well-being module

Population (No. of people): 
$$Pop_{t+1} = Pop_{t}(1+g) - EM_{t}$$
 (6.19)

Number of Emigrants (No. of people): 
$$EM_t = e_t * Pop_t$$
 (6.20)

Emigration rate: 
$$e_t = f_0 + f_1 GDP_{kt} + f_2 P_t \qquad (6.21)$$

Total labour supply (hours/year): 
$$LS_{t} = (\kappa_{1}m_{1} + \kappa_{2}m_{2})*Pop_{t}$$
 (6.22)

Total labour used in livelihood activities (hours/year):

$$LD_{t} = L_{o,t} * NO_{t} + L_{H,t} * NH_{t} + L_{G,t} * \sum_{i} Q_{i}$$
 (6.23)

Labour market equilibrium: 
$$LS_t = LD_t + L_{z,t} * TH_t$$
 (6.24a)

Total number of households (hhlds): 
$$TH_t = Pop_t/hs_0$$
 (6.24b)

Off-farm income (Rands/year): 
$$O_t = NO_t * W_t * L_{o,t}$$
 (6.25)

Household labour used in off-farm work (hours/household/year):

$$L_{0,t} = \delta_0 + \delta_1 E_t + \delta_2 W_t + \delta_3 P_{G,t} + \delta_4 P_{H,t} + \delta_5 P_{M,t} + \delta_6 P_{Y,t}$$
(4.2)

Number of households engaged in off-farm work (households):

$$NO_{t} = d_{0} + d_{1}GDP_{kt}$$
 (6.26)

Exogenous income (Rands/year): 
$$E_t = z_t * NS_t$$
 (6.27)

Social grant rate (Rand/beneficiary/year): 
$$z_t = k_0 + k_1 CPI_t$$
 (6.28a)

Number of social grants beneficiaries (hhlds): 
$$NS_t = n_0 *TH_t$$
 (6.28b)

Total net income (Rands/year): 
$$NI_t = R_t + V_t + O_t + E_t$$
 (6.29)

Economic well-being (Rands/capita): 
$$SW_t = \frac{NI_t}{Pop}$$
 (6.30)



Table 6.2: Definition of endogenous model variables

Variable	Definition	Units
ET <sub>t</sub>	Total evapotranspiration for system i (i = wetland or irrigation system) at the time period t	Millimetres
ETc <sub>t</sub>	Actual total crop evapotranspiration from cultivated area from system i (i = wetland or irrigation system) at the time period t	Millimetres
ET <sub>a</sub> <sup>i</sup>	Actual crop evapotranspiration per hectare of cultivated area in system i (i = wetland or irrigation system)	Millimetres/ha
$ET^{w}_{v}$	Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation	Millimetres
$GWL_t$	Wetland groundwater level at the time period t	Metres
GS <sub>t</sub>	Groundwater discharge from wetland at the time period t	Millimetres
CR <sub>t</sub>	Capillary rise at the time period t	Millimetres
GR <sub>t</sub>	Groundwater recharge from wetland soils	Millimetres
MC <sub>t</sub>	Wetland soil water content	Millimetres
$TA_t^w$	Total wetland area at the time period t	Hectares
AC <sub>t</sub> <sup>w</sup>	Total area of wetland under cultivation	Hectares
WCA <sub>t</sub>	Area of wetland converted to cultivation	Hectares
Q <sub>w</sub>	Number of households in the wetland system	Households
$Y_a^i$	Actual crop yield (i= wetland or irrigation system)	Tons/ha
$G_{q,t}$	Household grain supply at the time period t	kg/household/year
$L_{G,t}$	Household labour used in grain production at the time period t	Hours/household/year
TG t	Total grain supply from system i (i= wetland or irrigation system) at the time period t	Tons
$R_t$	Net value of grain at the time period t	Rands/year
B <sub>t</sub>	Biomass per ha at the time period t	Tons/ha
TB <sub>t</sub>	Total biomass stock	Tons
$V_{t}$	Net value of harvested biomass at the time period t	Rands/year
r <sub>t</sub>	Actual growth rate at the time period t	Non-dimensional
$\sigma_{_{ m t}}$	Growth rate multiplier at the time period t	Non-dimensional
$TB_t$	Total biomass stock at the time period t	Tons
h <sub>t</sub>	Total biomass harvested at the time period t	Tons
NH <sub>t</sub>	Number of biomass harvesters at the time period t	Households
$X_{H,t}^H$	Household biomass supply at the time period t	Tons/household/year
b <sub>t</sub>	Labour costs for biomass harvesting at the time period t	Rands/year



Table 6.2 (continued): Definition of endogenous model variables

Variable	Definition	Units
$L_{\rm H,t}$	Household labour used in biomass harvesting at the time period t	Hours/household/year
Pop <sub>t</sub>	Population at the time period t	People
EM <sub>t</sub>	Number of emigrants at the time period t	People
e <sub>t</sub>	Emigration rate at the time period t	Non-dimensional
TH <sub>t</sub>	Total number of households at the time period t	Households
NS <sub>t</sub>	Number of social grants beneficiaries	Households
LS <sub>t</sub>	Total labour supply at the time period t	Hours/year
O <sub>t</sub>	Off-farm income at the time period t	Rands/year
NO <sub>t</sub>	Number of households engaged in off- farm work at the time period t	Households
$L_{o,t}$	Household labour time used in off-farm work at the time period t	Hours/household/year
LD <sub>t</sub>	Total labour demand by livelihood activities at the time period t	Hours/year
E <sub>t</sub>	Exogenous income at the time period t	Rands/year
Z <sub>t</sub>	Social grant rate at the time period t	Rands/person/year
NI <sub>t</sub>	Total net income at the time period t	Rands/year
SW <sub>t</sub>	Human well-being at the time period t	Rands/capita

Table 6.3: State variables (stocks) in the model

Module variable	Definition	Units
GWL <sub>t</sub>	Wetland groundwater level	Metres
MC <sub>t</sub>	Wetland soil water content	Millimetres
AC <sub>t</sub> <sup>w</sup>	Total area of wetland under cultivation	Hectares
TA <sub>t</sub> <sup>w</sup>	Total wetland area	Hectares
B <sub>t</sub>	Biomass per hectare	Tons/ha
Pop <sub>t</sub>	Population at the time period t	People

# 6.5 Specification of model parameters and validation

Data for model parameters were obtained from a wide range of sources. Table 6.4 presents the full model parameter values and their sources.



Table 6.4: Parameter values and sources

Parameter label	Symbol	Value	Source
Crop yield response to water factor for maize	k <sub>y</sub>	1.25	Durand (2008)
Constant in the grain supply function	$\alpha_0$	6.47	Agricultural household model grain supply function estimates from Chapter 4; adjusted by the average values of household size and education.
Coefficient for exogenous income in the grain supply function	$\alpha_1$	0.01	Agricultural household model grain supply function estimates from Chapter 4
Coefficient for wage rate in the grain supply function	$\alpha_2$	-0.013	Agricultural household model grain supply function estimates from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of grain in the grain supply function	$\alpha_3$	0.06	Agricultural household model grain supply function estimates from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of wetland biomass in the grain supply function	$\alpha_4$	-0.01	Agricultural household model grain supply function estimates from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of market goods in the grain supply function	$\alpha_5$	-0.08	Agricultural household model grain supply function estimates from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of agricultural inputs in the grain supply function	$\alpha_6$	-0.08	Agricultural household model grain supply function estimates from Chapter 4
Constant in the labour use equation for grain production	$\beta_0$	8.38	Agricultural household model estimates of labour use in grain production from Chapter 4 adjusted by the average values of household size and education.
Coefficient for exogenous income in the labour use for grain production	$\beta_1$	-0.016	Agricultural household model estimates of labour use in grain production from Chapter 4.
Coefficient for wage rate in the labour use equation for grain production	$\beta_2$	-0.039	Agricultural household model estimates of labour use in grain production from Chapter 4.
Coefficient for the price of grain in the labour use equation for grain production	$\beta_3$	0.054	Agricultural household model estimates of labour use in grain production from Chapter 4.
Coefficient for the price of wetland biomass in the labour use equation for grain production	$\beta_4$	-0.01	Agricultural household model estimates of labour use in grain production from Chapter 4.
Coefficient for the price of market goods in the labour use equation for grain production	$\beta_5$	-0.001	Agricultural household model estimates of labour use in grain production from Chapter 4.
Coefficient for the price of agricultural inputs in the labour use equation for grain production	$\beta_6$	-0.01	Agricultural household model estimates of labour use in grain production from Chapter 4.
Constant in the biomass supply function	$\theta_0$	82.81	Agricultural household model estimates of the wetland biomass supply function from Chapter 4; adjusted by the average values of household size and education.
Coefficient for exogenous income in the biomass supply function	$\theta_1$	-0.09	Agricultural household model estimates of the wetland biomass supply function from Chapter 4
Coefficient for wage rate in the biomass supply function	$\theta_2$	-0.036	Agricultural household model estimates of the wetland biomass supply function from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of grain in the wetland biomass supply function	$\theta_3$	-0.13	Agricultural household model estimates of the wetland biomass supply function from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of wetland biomass in the wetland biomass supply function	$\theta_4$	0.01	Agricultural household model estimates of the wetland biomass supply function from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of market goods in the wetland biomass supply function	$\theta_5$	-0.37	Agricultural household model estimates of the wetland biomass supply function from Chapter 4



Table 6.4 (Continued): Parameter values and sources

Parameter label	Symbol	Value	Source
Coefficient for the price of agricultural inputs	•	0.11	Agricultural household model estimates of the
in the wetland biomass supply function	$\theta_6$		wetland biomass supply function from
			Chapter 4
Constant in the labour use equation for	$\rho_0$	13.41	Agricultural household model estimates of
wetland biomass harvesting	Ρ0		labour use in wetland biomass collection from
			Chapter 4; adjusted by the average values of
			household size and education.
Coefficient for exogenous income in the	$\rho_1$	-0.02	Agricultural household model estimates of
labour use equation for biomass collection	, 1		labour use in wetland biomass collection from
			Chapter 4
Coefficient for wage rate in the labour use	$\rho_2$	-0.086	Agricultural household model estimates of
equation for biomass collection			labour use in wetland biomass collection from
			Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of grain in the labour	$\rho_3$	-0.45	Agricultural household model estimates of
use equation for biomass collection			labour use in wetland biomass collection from
		0.02	Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of wetland biomass	$\rho_4$	0.02	Agricultural household model estimates of
in the labour use equation for biomass			labour use in wetland biomass collection from
collection		0.12	Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of market goods in	$\rho_5$	-0.12	Agricultural household model estimates from
the labour use equation for biomass collection			Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of agricultural inputs		0.34	Agricultural household model estimates of
in the labour use equation for biomass	$\rho_6$	0.34	labour use in wetland biomass collection from
collection			Chapter 4
Constant in off-farm labour use equation	2	-6.60	Agricultural household model estimates of
Constant in our rain labour ase equation	$\delta_0$	0.00	labour use in off-farm work from Chapter 4;
			adjusted by the average values of household
			size and education.
Coefficient for exogenous income in off-farm	$\delta_1$	-0.74	Agricultural household model estimates of
labour use equation	01		labour use in off-farm work from Chapter 4
Coefficient for wage rate in off-farm labour	$\delta_2$	0.014	Agricultural household model estimates of
use equation	0.2		labour use in off-farm work from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of grain in off-farm	$\delta_3$	-0.12	Agricultural household model estimates of
labour use equation	3		labour use in off-farm work from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of wetland biomass	$\delta_4$	-0.01	Agricultural household model estimates of
in off-farm labour use equation	·		labour use in off-farm work from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of market goods in	$\delta_5$	-0.93	Agricultural household model estimates of
off-farm labour use equation	_	0.64	labour use in off-farm work from Chapter 4
Coefficient for the price of agricultural inputs	$\delta_6$	0.64	Agricultural household model estimates of
in off-farm labour use equation	~	0.017	labour use in off-farm work from Chapter 4
Natural population growth rate  Constant in the number of people employed	g -1	0.017 -3.62	Statistics South Africa (2004)  Regression analysis of the number of people
off-farm-GDP per capita regression	$d_0$	-3.02	employed in off-farm work and the GDP per
on-taini-obi per capita regression			capita
Coefficient for GDP per capita effect on	4	0.01	Regression analysis of the number of people
number of people employed in off-farm work	$d_1$	3.01	employed in off-farm work and the GDP per
The first control of the first			capita
Constant in the emigration rate equation	$f_0$	-4.17 e(-03)	Multiple regression analysis of the emigration
β	10		rate, GDP per capita and rainfall
Coefficient for GDP per capita effect on	$f_1$	2.70e(-07)	Multiple regression analysis of the emigration
emigration rate	*1		rate, GDP per capita and rainfall
Coefficient for rainfall effect on emigration	$f_2$	-6.9e(-07)	Multiple regression analysis of the emigration
rate	- 2		rate, GDP per capita and rainfall



Table 6.4 (Continued): Parameter values and sources

Coefficient for the effect of CPI on social grant rate consumer price index regression analysis   Constant for the CPI effect on social grant rate	Parameter label	Symbol	Value	Source
Social grant rate   Final social grant   Final social g		· ·		
Biomass carrying capacity		<b>K</b> <sub>1</sub>		
Constant for the CPI effect on social grant rate   Coefficient of rainfall in cultivated wetland area regression extracted on social grant rate regression extimates of wetland cultivated wrean are regression extimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population cultivated wrean area regression on agricultural input price and population are regression of the price of agricultural input price and population are regression of the price of agricultural input price and population are regression.    Coefficient of the price of agricultural input price and population are regression of the cultivated wretland area regression of the cultivated wetland area regression.    Coefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regression of working adults (aged 1.5x-64years) in the population of children (aged 4-1.5years) in the population.    Proportion of working adults (aged 4-1.5years) in the population.    Proportion of children (aged 4-1.5years) in the population.    Pr		1 <sub>z</sub>	70tons/ha/vear	
Constant for the CPI effect on social grant rate-consumer price index regression analysis   Coefficient of rainfall in cultivated wetland area regression   a1   co.042   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Coefficient of grain price in cultivated wetland area regression   Coefficient of the price of agricultural input (seed maize) in the cultivated wetland area regression   a3   co.041   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Coefficient of the price of agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a4   co.032   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   of agricultural input price and population   of agricultural input price and population   of strains   of st	J S M	K <sub>B</sub>	]	-
Social grant rate   No   Propertion of grain price in cultivated wetland area regression   a   2   0.021   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and ratinfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   2   0.021   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   2   0.021   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   2   0.041   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   0.041   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   0.032   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   0.032   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   0.032   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   a   0.032   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area and ratinfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   x   0.5   Statistics South Africa (2004)   Statistics South Africa (2004)   Statistics South Africa (2004)   (2004	Constant for the CPI effect on	ŀ	-48.35	
Coefficient of rainfall in cultivated wetland area regression   a		<b>K</b> <sub>0</sub>		
wetland area regression  Coefficient of grain price in cultivated wetland area regression  Coefficient of the price of agricultural input price and population  Coefficient of the price of agricultural input frice and apopulation  Coefficient of the price of agricultural input frice and population  Rultiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Roefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regression  Proportion of working adults (aged 15-64-years) in the population  Proportion of children (aged 4-15-years) in the population  Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)  Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)  Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass  Coefficient for biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvesters  Field capacity of the soil  WHC  Total number of households under irrigation  Acr 170ha  Cultivated wetland area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Ac 2  0.5  Statistics South Africa (2004)  Stephenne and Lambin (2004)  Stephenne and Lambin (2001); adjusted to take into account the fact that most of children go to school  Thenya (2006)  Thenya (2006)  Thenya (2006)  Thenya (2006)  Area under irrigation  Acr 170ha  Chiron (2005)  Total number of households under irrigation  Cultivated wetland area per household wetland biomass growth rate  Average household stree  Average household size  Actual evapotranspiration from population in the cultivated area		9	-0.042	
agricultural input price and population   Coefficient of grain price in cultivated wetland area regression   a 2   0.021   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area regression   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wetland area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated wet and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Statistics South Africa (2004)   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population		$a_1$		
Coefficient of grain price in cultivated wetland area regression   a 2   0.021   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   mte cultivated wetland area regression   a 3   0.041   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population   Proportion of working adults (aged   15-64 years) in the population   No.5   Statistics South Africa (2004)   Statistics South Africa (2004)     O.3   Statistics South Africa (2004)   O.3   Statistics South Africa (2004)   O.3   Statistics South Africa (2004)   O.3   Statistics South Africa (2004)   O.3   Statistics South Africa (2004)   O.3				
cultivated wetland area regression         α₂         cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population           Coefficient of the price of agricultural input (seed maize) in the cultivated wetland area regression         a₃         -0.041         Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population           Coefficient of the population of working adults (aged 15-64years) in the population         K₁         0.5         Statistics South Africa (2004)           Proportion of children (aged 4-15/eavars) in the population         K₂         0.3         Statistics South Africa (2004)           Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)         m₁         400         Stephenne and Lambin (2001) years (children go to school           Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass         s₀         0.3         Thenya (2006)           Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvesters         c         0.0042         Regression analysis of the number of biomass harvesters           Field capacity of the soil         WHC         140mm/m         Saxton and Rawls (2006)           Total number of households under irrigation         Qr         283 households         Computed by dividing the area under irrigation (from Chiron, 2005) by the irrigated area per household, which is 0.6 ha per household survey           Cultivated wetland area per households that obtain social grants	Coefficient of grain price in	9	0.021	
agricultural input price and population		$\mathfrak{u}_2$		cultivated area and rainfall, grain price,
agricultural input (seed maize) in the cultivated wetland area regression  Coefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regression  Coefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regression  Proportion of working adults (aged 15-64years) in the population  Proportion of children (aged 4-15years) in the population  Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)  Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)  Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)  Coefficient for biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvesters  Field capacity of the soil  Total number of households under irrigation  Cultivated wetland area per household  Proportion of households that obtain social grants  Coefficient for the test of the grant social grants  Coefficient of the selfect of the grant and the gra				agricultural input price and population
agricultural input (seed marze) in the cultivated wetland area regression  Coefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regression  Coefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regression  Robortion of working adults (aged 15-64years) in the population  Proportion of children (aged 4-15years) in the population  Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)  Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)  Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass  Coefficient for biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvesters  Total labour of the soil  AC'  Total number of households under irrigation  AC'  Total number of households under irrigation  AC'  Total number of households under irrigation  AC'  Total number of households that obtain social grants  Coefficient of the effect of the groundwater level on wetland biomass parts and the proportion of households that obtain social grants  Coefficient of the effect of the groundwater level on wetland biomass growth rate  Average household size  Average household size  P <sub>1</sub> 500mm/year  Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population  Statistics South Africa (2004)  Statistics South Africa (2004)  Stephenne and Lambin (2001)  Stephenne and Lambin (2006)  Total number of the soil  AC'  170ha  Chiron (2005)  Comp		a.	-0.041	Multiple regression estimates of wetland
Regression   Coefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regression   A	agricultural input (seed maize) in	<b>4</b> 3		cultivated area and rainfall, grain price,
Coefficient of the population in the cultivated wetland area regressiona 40.032Multiple regression estimates of wetland cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and populationProportion of working adults (aged 15-64years) in the populationκ10.5Statistics South Africa (2004)Proportion of children (aged 4-15years) in the populationκ20.3Statistics South Africa (2004)Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)m11600Stephenne and Lambin (2001)Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)m2400Stephenne and Lambin (2001); adjusted to take into account the fact that most of children go to schoolIntrinsic growth rate for wetland biomassS00.3Thenya (2006)Intrinsic growth rate for biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvestersC0.0042Regression analysis of the number of biomass harvested and natural wetland area historical time series dataField capacity of the soilWHC140mm/mSaxton and Rawls (2006)Area under irrigationACr170haChiron (2005)Total number of households under irrigationQr283 householdsComputed by dividing the area under irrigation (from Chiron, 2005) by the irrigated area per household (from household survey data)Cultivated wetland area per householdwc00.64Household surveyHousehold surveyby Tarr et al. (2004) biomass growth ratep. 0.0001Estimate based on the reeds yield-water depth correlations by Tarr et al. (2004) biomass growth rateAverage household sizehs07.3 peopleHousehold surv	the cultivated wetland area			agricultural input price and population
cultivated wetland area regression         α4 significant price and population         cultivated area and rainfall, grain price, agricultural input price and population           Proportion of working adults (aged 15-64years) in the population         K₁         0.5         Statistics South Africa (2004)           Proportion of children (aged 4-15years) in the population         K₂         0.3         Statistics South Africa (2004)           Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)         m₁         1600         Stephenne and Lambin (2001)           Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)         m₂         400         Stephenne and Lambin (2001); adjusted to take into account the fact that most of children go to school           Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass         s₀         0.3         Thenya (2006)           Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass harvesters         s₀         0.3         Thenya (2006)           Coefficient for biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvesters         WHC         140mm/m         Saxton and Rawls (2006)           Area under irrigation         ACr         170ha         Chiron (2005)           Total number of households under irrigation         Qr         283 households         Computed by dividing the area under irrigation (from Chiron, 2005) by the irrigated area per household, which is 0.6 ha per household (from household survey)           Cultivated wetland area per households that obta				
cultivated wetland area regression         collivated area and rainall, grain price, agricultural input price and population           Proportion of working adults (aged 15-64/years) in the population         K1         0.5         Statistics South Africa (2004)           Proportion of children (aged 4-15/years) in the population         K2         0.3         Statistics South Africa (2004)           Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)         m1         1600         Stephenne and Lambin (2001); adjusted to take into account the fact that most of children go to school           Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass         S0         0.3         Thenya (2006)           Intrinsic growth rate for biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvesters         c         0.0042         Regression analysis of the number of biomass harvested and natural wetland area historical time series data           Field capacity of the soil         WHC         140mm/m         Saxton and Rawls (2006)           Area under irrigation         ACr         170ha         Chiron (2005)           Total number of households under irrigation         Qr         283 households         Computed by dividing the area under irrigation (from Chiron, 2005) by the irrigated area per household, which is 0.6 ha per household           Cultivated wetland area per households that obtain social grants         n         0.64         Household survey           Ocefficient of the effect of the ground		a,	0.032	
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	cultivated wetland area regression	-* 4		
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$				
13-64years) in the population   K <sub>2</sub>   0.3   Statistics South Africa (2004)		κ,	0.5	Statistics South Africa (2004)
15years) in the population   Total labour supplied per adult per year (hours)   Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)   Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)   May   400   Stephenne and Lambin (2001); adjusted to take into account the fact that most of children go to school   Thenya (2006)		1		
	, 0	κ,	0.3	Statistics South Africa (2004)
$ \begin{array}{c} \text{year (hours)} \\ \text{Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)} \\ \text{Intrinsic growth rate for wetland biomass} \\ \text{Coefficient for biomass stock in the regression for the number of biomass harvesters} \\ \text{Field capacity of the soil} \\ \text{Acra under irrigation} \\ \text{Collivated wetland area per household} \\ \text{Cultivated wetland area per household} \\ \text{Coultivated wetland area per household} \\ \text{Coefficient of the effect of the groundwater level on wetland biomass growth rate} \\ \text{Average household size} \\ \text{Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland very and the per household survey} \\ \text{Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland very proper in the per household survey} \\ \text{Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland very per per per location of the effect of per per in the per household survey} \\ \text{Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per year} \\ \text{Actual evapotranspiration per year} \\ \text{Actual evapotranspiration per year} \\ \text{Actual evapotranspiration per year} \\ Actual evapotranspiration per per per per per per per per per per$		2		
Total labour supplied per child per year (hours)  Total labour supplied per child per year (hours) $m_2$ $m_2$ $m_2$ $m_2$ $m_2$ $m_3$ $m_2$ $m_3$ $m_4$ $m_4$ $m_5$ $m_6$ $m_6$ $m_8$		$m_1$	1600	Stephenne and Lambin (2001)
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$		1		
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$		$m_2$	400	
	year (hours)			
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	Table 1		0.2	
		$\mathbf{s}_0$	0.3	Thenya (2006)
$\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$			0.0042	Decreesies enclusie of the susselves of
$\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$		С	0.0042	
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$				
Area under irrigation $ \begin{array}{c} AC^r \\ $		WHO	140mm/m	
Total number of households under irrigation $ \begin{array}{c} Q_r \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} 283 \text{ households} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} Computed \text{ by dividing the area under irrigation (from Chiron, 2005) by the irrigated area per household, which is 0.6 ha per household (from household survey data)} \\ Cultivated wetland area per household \\ Proportion of households that obtain social grants \\ Coefficient of the effect of the groundwater level on wetland biomass growth rate \\ Average household size \\ Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per year \\ Precipitation \\ P_t \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} 283 \text{ households} \\ Ood \\ Ood$				
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	Area under irrigation	AC	170na	Chiron (2003)
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	Total number of households under	0	283 households	Computed by dividing the area under
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	irrigation	<b>∠</b> r		
				irrigated area per household, which is 0.6 ha
household  Proportion of households that obtain social grants  Coefficient of the effect of the groundwater level on wetland biomass growth rate  Average household size  Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per year  Precipitation	Cultivated wetland area per	WC	0.66	
Coefficient of the effect of the groundwater level on wetland biomass growth rate  Average household size  Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per year  Precipitation $\mu_1$ 0.0001  Estimate based on the reeds yield-water depth correlations by Tarr et al. (2004)  Household survey  Dye et al. (2008); Von der Heyden and New (2003); Kleynhans (2004).  Precipitation $\mu_1$ 0.0001  Estimate based on the reeds yield-water depth correlations by Tarr et al. (2004)  Household survey $\mu_1$ $\mu_1$ $\mu_2$ $\mu_3$ $\mu_4$ $\mu_4$ $\mu_5$ $\mu_6$ $\mu_6$ $\mu_7$ $\mu_8$ $\mu_9$		n <sub>o</sub>	0.64	Household survey
groundwater level on wetland biomass growth rate  Average household size  Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per year		U		
depth correlations by Tarr et al. (2004)		$\mu_1$	0.0001	
Average household size $hs_0$ 7.3 people Household survey  Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per year $p_t$ 1100mm/ha/year Dye et al. (2008); Von der Heyden and New (2003); Kleynhans (2004).  Precipitation $p_t$ 500mm/year McCartney (2005)		• 1		depth correlations by Tarr et al. (2004)
Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per year       η       1100mm/ha/year       Dye et al. (2008); Von der Heyden and New (2003); Kleynhans (2004).         Precipitation       P <sub>t</sub> 500mm/year       McCartney (2005)				
Actual evapotranspiration from natural wetland vegetation per yearη1100mm/ha/yearDye et al. (2008); Von der Heyden and New (2003); Kleynhans (2004).PrecipitationPt500mm/yearMcCartney (2005)	Average household size	$hs_0$	7.3 people	Household survey
natural wetland vegetation per year (2003); Kleynhans (2004).  Precipitation P <sub>t</sub> 500mm/year McCartney (2005)	Actual evapotranspiration from		1100mm/ha/vear	Dye et al. (2008): Von der Heyden and New
Precipitation P <sub>t</sub> 500mm/year McCartney (2005)		1		
Tt		р	500mm/year	
Maximum grain yield in wetland $Y_{\rm m}^{\rm w}$ 3tons/ha   Chiron (2005)			,	• • •
	iviaximum grain yield in wetland	$Y_{\rm m}^{\rm w}$	stons/na	Cniron (2005)



Table 6.4 (Continued): Parameter values and sources

Parameter label	Symbol	Value	Source	
Maximum grain yield in irrigation	$\mathbf{Y}_{\mathrm{m}}^{\mathrm{w}}$	2.5 tons/ha	Chiron (2005)	
Maximum crop evapotranspiration per season	$\mathrm{ET}_{\mathrm{m}}$	490mm/year	Durand (2008)	
Wage rate	$\mathbf{W}_{\mathrm{t}}$	R8/hour	Adekola (2007)	
Price of grain	$P_{G,t}$	R1.58/kg	Household survey	
Price of wetland biomass	$P_{H,t}$	R2/kg	Adekola (2007)	
Price of agricultural inputs	$P_{Y,t}$	R5.29/kg	Household survey	
Price of water	$P_{W,t}$	R0.13/mm	Department of Water Affairs	
Price of market goods	$P_{M,t}$	R345	Household survey	
Consumer Price Index	CPI <sub>t</sub>	138	SARB (2009)	
GDP per capita	$GDP_{k,t}$	R34234/capita/annum	SARB (2009)	

In system dynamic modelling, the ultimate objective of the validation process is to establish the structural validity of the model with respect to the modelling purpose. Confidence in the model simulation results is high only if the model has robust predictive ability in reproducing historical trends. Dynamic simulation models are validated by comparing model predicted versus observed past trends for selected variables. However, the validity tests should place emphasis on pattern prediction of key variables rather than point predictions, mainly because of the long-term orientation of these models (Güneralp and Barlas, 2003). Because of the limited availability of observed time series data for most of the variables in the model, the validation exercise was done for a few variables for which past trend data could be obtained. The period used for the validation is 1990 to 2006. After validation the model will be used to conduct policy simulations for a 14-year post validation period, (i.e. 2006 to 2020).

Figures 6.3 and 6.4 compare the observed versus the model predicted values for the wetland area converted to agriculture and social grant rates, respectively. Figure 6.3 shows that the wetland area converted to agriculture has been increasing with a corresponding decrease in the wetland area. This has been primarily driven by the increasing frequency of droughts, which increases wetland conversion rates due to its fertile soils and ability to retain soil moisture.

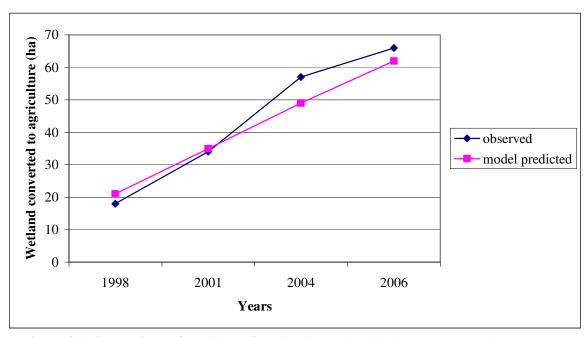


Figure 6.3: Comparison of model predicted and actual wetland area converted to agriculture (Observed data obtained from: Sarron, 2005; Adekola, 2007)

The predicted social grant rate follows an increasing trend in line with the observed trend due to an increase in inflation (Figure 6.4). Whilst the model predicted values are not exactly equal to the observed values in both cases, the model does well in predicting the observed pattern of these two variables. The correlation between the model predicted and the observed values is more than 0.9 in both cases, suggesting that the model can be used with confidence.

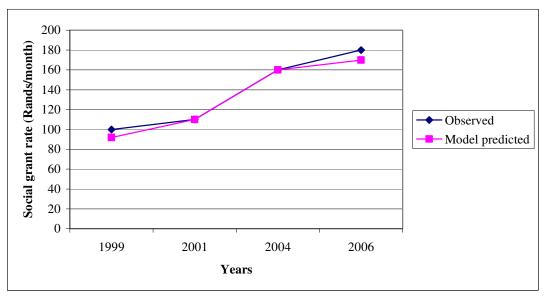


Figure 6.4: Comparison of model predicted versus actual social grant rate (Observed data obtained from: National Treasury, 2008)

Clearly it would be possible to establish a much stronger case if more numerical time series data were available for more variables in the model. Lack of past trend data on most variables severely restricted the study's validation options and collecting new dynamic data necessitates long time periods. However, it should be kept in mind that the main purpose of this model is to capture broad dynamic behaviour patterns of the real system, not provide point predictions.

#### 6.6 Simulation of impacts of alternative wetland management and policy regimes

The first step in performing a simulation experiment is to run the baseline scenario, which becomes the benchmark against which simulated scenarios are compared. Scenario simulations are performed by changing values of exogenous variables in the model and comparing the outcomes with the base scenario. Policy scenarios considered for simulations are selected on the basis of possible government policy interventions. The policy scenarios simulated include: tax and subsidy policy regimes that work through changing effective prices of agricultural outputs, inputs, and market goods; as well as government policy instruments such as direct income transfers and changes in availability of off-farm work which are driven by changes in social policy and economic growth trends.



In order to maintain a functional wetland ecosystem in which biodiversity protection is maximal it is necessary to put part of the wetland area under protection. However, total protection is not always necessary in order to maintain high levels of diversity, but would be necessary if the goal is to maintain an ecosystem intact in its natural state, which in most cases is done for promoting ecotourism. In this study's simulation experiments the author considered a scenario of partial protection through placing some percentage of the wetland under conservation.

Although climate change predictions for precipitation are less consistent, most simulations for southern Africa indicate that rainfall will decline in the next 100 years. Predictions for 2050 show that rainfall in southern Africa could be 10% to 20% lower than the 1950 to 2000 averages (IPCC, 2001). Based on these predictions, a scenario of a 10% reduction in annual precipitation is considered in the simulation experiments.

To evaluate the social desirability of simulated intervention scenarios, final outcome values are compared (values at the end of the simulation period, which is the year 2020) for selected indicators with the baseline scenario as done in other studies (Eppink *et al.*, 2004; Saysel *et al.* 2002). As the primary purpose of this study is to investigate the impacts of alternative policy regimes on wetland functioning, ecosystem services and human well-being, the key variables considered in the evaluations are: (1) wetland crop (grain) production and harvested biomass and their values (the two wetland services considered in the model); (2) the total wetland area and the total biomass stock (indicators of wetland conservation status), (3) wetland soil water content and groundwater level (indicators of wetland hydrological regulation services) and (4) net income per capita (a proxy for human well-being). The specific policy scenarios evaluated and results of the simulation experiments are given in Table 6.5.



Table 6.5: Changes in value of selected indicator variables, expressed as percentages of baseline values

Percentage change in indicator variables compared to their baseline levels									
Policy scenarios	Total biomass harvested (tons)	Total biomass stock (tons)	Total wetland grain supply (tons)	Wetland ground water level (m)	Soil water content (mm)	Net value of wetland grain (Rands)	Net value of harvested biomass (Rands)	Total wetland area (ha)	Net income per capita (Rands/ca pita/year)
(1) Taxing grain production (30% on price)	0.11	0.04	-0.01	0.26	0.01	-10.06	4.29	0.43	-0.21
(2) Taxing biomass products (30% on price)	-0.11	0.06	0.01	-0.01	-0.01	0.04	-17.79	-0.12	0.02
(3) Combined tax on grain and biomass (30% each)	-0.85	0.15	-0.01	0.45	0.07	-10.07	-10.15	0.46	-0.23
(4) 30% increase in agricultural input prices <sup>a</sup>	0.12	0.14	-0.21	1.76	5.1	-0.19	3.6	1.15	-0.28
(5) 30% increase in the off-farm wage rate	-0.55	0.01	-0.01	0.04	0.01	-39.58	-26.65	0.14	6.59
(6) Increased availability of off-farm opportunities (5% increase in GDP per capita)	0.10	0.29	-0.81	0.27	1.42	-0.01	0.03	2.72	6.40
(7) Putting 30% of wetland area under protection	-0.22	38.63	-22.45	0.06	43.77	-22.45	-0.45	92.98	-0.46
(8) 10% reduction in precipitation	-0.89	-33.01	1.60	-0.91	-13.6	-4.10	-2.24	-76.58	-0.13

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup>Price of maize seed is used as this is the key variable input used in wetland grain production.

A total of eight policy experiments have been simulated. Simulation results show that taxing wetland conversion to agriculture through reduced grain output prices (scenario 1) weakens the incentive for expanding the cultivated area in the wetland, leading to decreases in wetland crop production. This leads to an increase in the total wetland area and thus lowers evapotranspiration from cultivated land (crop water use), reducing the total evapotranspiration from the system. As a result, soil water content in the wetland increases lifting the wetland groundwater level as the recharge to groundwater is increased. In response, the actual growth rate of wetland biomass



increases (equation 6.13) causing an increase in wetland biomass per hectare (equation 6.11).

The total biomass stock is consequently higher due to increases in the actual growth rate of biomass and total wetland area, and the number of biomass harvesters increases as a result. The net income per capita decreases due to the substantial reduction in the net value of grain production, which by far exceeds the increase in net value of biomass harvested. In a nutshell, taxing grain output production discourages wetland conversion to agriculture, which negatively impacts human well-being to the advantage of maintaining wetland ecological integrity.

Taxing the excessive harvesting of biomass products (scenario 2) through lowering the product prices, reduces the total biomass harvested and increase biomass stock. The wetland grain supply increases (equation 4.1) causing an increase in crop water use (ET<sub>a</sub>) with consequent reductions in soil water content and wetland groundwater level. Although the reduction in the groundwater level reduces the natural wetland biomass growth (equation 6.13), the total biomass stock increases due to a reduction in the total of harvested biomass. The net value of harvested biomass decreases substantially due to a reduction in the total of harvested biomass. On the one hand, the incentive for grain production improves leading to a higher conversion of wetland area for agriculture, which in turn causes the net income per capita to increase. On the other hand, the result of this tax scenario also shows that increasing the price of harvested biomass increases returns to biomass products relative to that of wetland grain and therefore reduces conversion of wetland to agriculture.

These results demonstrate the trade-offs that need to be managed between improving human well-being in the short-run and conserving the wetland ecosystem (long-term sustainability goals), and between supply of the two wetland services (crop production and biomass harvesting) competing for water, labour and land resources.

A combined tax on both grain and biomass products (scenario 3) is found to be more effective in conserving the wetland and maintaining hydrological integrity than levying separate taxes on biomass and grain production. This of course comes at a higher welfare cost.





An alternative way of taxing wetland conversion is through increasing agricultural input prices (scenario 4), which has similar but stronger effects compared to increasing grain prices. It increases agricultural production costs and reduces returns to agricultural production and therefore reduces the rate of conversion of the wetland area to cultivated agriculture. As can be seen from Table 6.5, a much higher growth in total wetland area is obtained under the input price policy interventions than with the grain price tax policy (scenario 1). Also a much larger impact on water levels and wetland hydrology are realised. This, however, comes at a higher loss in the economic welfare measured in net income per capita. The above results suggest that, while policy interventions such as agricultural prices, support policies (e.g. subsidies) have the potential to improve the welfare of poor rural farmers they can also lead to agricultural intensification and environmental degradation.

Like taxing prices of other inputs, intervention through the urban wage rate policy instrument (scenario 5) reduces wetland grain supply (equation 4.1) and its value. Improving off-farm wages, however, results in substantial decreases in production and the net value of harvested biomass since labour is the main input in biomass harvesting and hence the high sensitivity to movements in wages. Despite this, the net income per capita increases due to a substantial increase in the off-farm income (equation 6.25) component of total net income (equation 6.29). At the same time the wage rate option achieves conservation objectives, but at lower levels compared to commodity price (tax/subsidy) regimes. This makes clear the importance of understanding the important distinctions carefully weighing the potential net impacts of alternative policy intervention choices and instruments.

The wetland area and net income per capita grow with the highest percentage through an increase in off-farm income opportunities (scenario 6). This result derives from the fact that an increase in off-farm income opportunities (through increasing GDP per capita) causes an increase in the emigration rate (equation 6.21). This leads to a reduction in the population, which in turn reduces the rate of wetland conversion to agriculture as demands for land and food is reduced. Accordingly, wetland grain supply and the net value of grain decline. Income from off-farm employment opportunities increases as the number of households engaged in off-farm work



increases. The increase in off-farm income totally offsets reductions in net value of harvested biomass and grain resulting in a significant increase in net income per capita. Like improved off-farm wages, this scenario has a double dividend effect as it simultaneously improves economic well-being and conserves the wetland ecosystem.

This result demonstrates the potential for indirect economic incentive measures such as improving off-farm employment and income opportunities to contribute towards improving both human well-being and wetland conservation. However, as demonstrated by Brandon and Wells (1992) and Ferraro and Kramer (1997) such measures do not automatically lead to sustainable resource management and in some cases the availability of alternative income sources leads to the intensification of resource use activities. For alternative livelihood and income sources to spur conservation of wetland resources, it is important to emphasise the overall economic development in the area to increase the availability of off-farm employment opportunities outside of the natural resources or agriculture-based economy. Promoting livelihood diversification out of agriculture becomes an important strategy for enhancing sustainable wetland management.

The results of the wetland conservation strategy (scenario 7) show that the economic well-being of the local population declines considerably due to substantial reductions in the value of biomass harvested and grain produced in the wetland, as harvesting of natural products and the conversion of the wetland to cropland are restricted. However, the reduction in the economic welfare to the local community only takes into account direct use benefits of the wetland without considering its non-use values and indirect benefits of maintaining biodiversity intactness and hydrological regulation services.

The predicted reduction in precipitation (scenario 8) produces by far the worst results in terms of conserving the wetland. The wetland area declines by close to 90% due to an increased rate of conversion of the wetland to cultivation and total cultivated wetland area as rainfall declines (equations 6.10a and 6.10b). The rate of wetland conversion to cultivation increases as more households move into the wetland due to its ability to retain soil moisture throughout the year. As a consequence, the total area of wetland under cultivation expands and, accordingly, the total wetland area declines.



A reduction in precipitation adversely affects wetland soil moisture content and the groundwater level, which in conjunction with the recession of the total wetland area leads to a reduction in total biomass.

#### 6.7 Concluding Summary

This chapter developed and applied a dynamic ecological-economic model to analyse the linkages between the economic and ecological elements in the wetland system under study. The model was used to analyse the impacts of various policy and management regimes on wetland functioning and economic well-being.

The model showed that economic and ecological systems are intricately linked with important feedback effects. Changes in the socio-economic system influence wetland ecosystem processes while changes in ecosystem processes influences the economic system through provision of services, which influence economic well-being.

The results of the policy simulations suggest that wetland ecosystem services (crop production and natural resource harvesting) are interlinked with subtle trade-offs involved through their competition for labour, water and land resources. Some policy interventions such as improving profitability of cultivation through supporting agricultural output prices and/or subsidizing input prices may improve economic wellbeing, but at the expense of wetland conservation.

Results also suggest that increasing off-farm income and employment opportunities has a double dividend effect, because it simultaneously improves economic well-being and enhances wetland conservation. Therefore, promoting livelihood diversification out of agriculture becomes an important strategy for enhancing sustainable wetland management.

A pure conservation strategy that aims at protecting the wetland leads to substantial reductions in economic welfare of the local population unless their livelihood sources are diversified into alternative non-farm employment and income options. This study also confirms that the predicted reduction in rainfall in southern Africa is likely to

126



accelerate wetland conversion to agriculture and undermine wetland conservation efforts.



# **CHAPTER 7**

# SUMMARY, CONCLUSIONS AND IMPLICATIONS FOR POLICY AND RESEARCH

#### 7.1 Introduction

This chapter summarises the key findings of this study and draw conclusions and policy insights from the research results. The first section of the chapter summarises the main findings of the study and draws policy implications. The section that follows articulates the limitations of the study and suggests possible areas for further research.

# 7.2 Summary of key findings and policy implications

This study developed an empirical model to analyse the determinants of rural household labour allocation and supply decisions for competing livelihood activities including the production of agricultural and wetland products. The study also developed a dynamic ecological-economic model based on the system dynamics framework and applied it to evaluate the trade-offs between provisions of various components of a bundle of multiple wetland services through simulation of the impacts of alternative management and policy regimes on wetland functioning, the services they provide and economic well-being. This aspect is largely ignored in the literature on wetlands in Africa. Most studies on wetlands in Africa have dwelled much on static economic valuation approaches aimed at valuing the contribution of wetland services to human welfare at a given time and do not consider the intertemporal nature of the interaction between ecological and economic systems. The results of the study are useful for designing effective policies to enhance sustainable management of wetland resources in developing countries.

Results of the study showed that improved household education level enhances diversification into off-farm work. The policy implication of this result is that the government needs to promote investments in education and skills development for the



rural population to enhance diversification of their livelihoods out of agriculture and reduce pressure on wetlands.

The results also indicate that household exogenous income and wealth status (asset endowment) enhance farm production and reduce dependence on harvesting wetland products for livelihood. This result implies that government should pursue policy measures that reduce rural household liquidity constraints and enhance investment in productive assets (e.g. improving rural household access to credit and off-farm income opportunities) to boost farm production and provide positive incentives for the rural population to conserve wetlands.

Findings also suggest that asset-poor households with limited non-farm incomes, most of whom are female-headed, rely heavily on wetland products for their livelihood. This finding is consistent with the hypothesis that poorer households are more reliant on local environmental resources than wealthy households are. This also suggests that wetlands play an important role as livelihood safety nets for rural poor households by reducing their vulnerability to shocks such as droughts and other income shocks.

Two main policy implications can be drawn from this result. The first one is that the government, policy-makers and natural resource managers need to acknowledge the livelihood safety net role wetlands play in rural livelihoods and recognise that environmental protection policies limiting or banning access and use of wetland resources can deepen rural poverty, as the poor suffer more from the deprivation of these resources. Therefore, instead of adopting strict wetland protection policies, there is need to invest in the development and promotion of use of sustainable wetland management practices (in particular crop, livestock and natural products management practices) that allow the poor to utilise wetlands to enhance their economic well-being with minimum adverse effects on the wetland ecological condition. The second policy implication that can also be drawn from this result is the importance of the provision of safety nets for the poor through the promotion of government programmes and policies that support diversification into off-farm livelihood and income sources to provide positive incentives for wetland conservation and sustainable use. This suggests that sustainable wetland management has to be integrated within the broader

129



rural development programmes aimed at reducing poverty in order to provide the necessary incentives for the poor to adopt sustainable wetland management options.

The dynamic ecological-economic model developed in this study demonstrated the importance of considering feedback effects between ecological and economic systems. Due to its modularity, the model developed in this study can easily be adapted to similar small-scale wetlands in southern Africa.

Policy scenario simulations using the model showed that policy interventions such as improving the profitability of cultivation through supporting agricultural output prices and/or subsidising input prices may improve economic well-being, but at the expense of wetland conservation.

Simulation results also suggest that increasing off-farm income opportunities has a double dividend effect because it simultaneously improves economic well-being and enhances wetland conservation. Therefore, promoting livelihood diversification out of agriculture becomes an important strategy for enhancing sustainable wetland management as also suggested earlier. Livelihood diversification can be supported through increased government investment in rural infrastructure, downstream value chains, health and education.

The simulation results further suggest that increasing returns to the collection of wetland natural products reduces wetland conversion. This implies that the development of a competitive marketing system for harvested biomass products, which increases returns to wetland biomass products relative to that of wetland grain, has the potential to reduce the conversion of wetlands to agriculture, which poses a major threat to the ecological integrity of the wetland than the harvesting of natural products.

The results also showed that a pure conservation strategy that aims at protecting the wetland leads to substantial loss in the economic welfare of the local population unless their livelihood sources are diversified into alternative non-farm employment and income options. This again emphasises the need to diversify the livelihood

130



options for rural populations and also identify and promote local level sustainable wetland management strategies rather than putting wetlands under strict protection.

This study also confirms that the predicted reduction in annual rainfall in southern Africa is likely to accelerate wetland conversion to agriculture and undermine wetland conservation efforts. The implication of this result is that improving the capacity of rural farmers to adapt to climate change, especially droughts, is important to reduce pressure on wetland resources. Strategies that reduce the dependence on wetlands for agriculture should be promoted, such as: investments in water harvesting and storage; efficient irrigation methods; and promoting the use of drought tolerant crops and diversifying out of agriculture.

# 7.3 Limitations of the study and areas for further research

The agricultural household model presented in this study does not consider risk and uncertainty, which is a common feature in the environment under which rural households make decisions. Therefore, a possible extension of the present study is the development of a household model based on expected utility theory taking into account risk and uncertainty. In addition, the agricultural household model can also be improved by including institutional (property rights) and social factors that influence access and use of wetland resources.

Although the dynamic ecological-economic model that was developed generated useful results and policy insights for wetland management it has a number of limitations, which could be the basis for further research. The main challenges in the development of the model were the limited availability of data to validate the model and insufficient understanding of several feedback mechanisms in the modelled system. Possible improvements in the model include:

- including groundwater flow from hillslope to wetland, which is a key component of the hydrology of the wetland and artificial drainage activities which affect groundwater levels;
- modelling the hydrological processes at a monthly or seasonal time step instead of an annual time step to capture the seasonal variations of wetland water;



- adding a module sector on wetland soil organic matter, which is linked to wetland soil moisture; and
- including feedbacks from well-being to population dynamics and also capture the feedbacks of emigration on total net income through remittances.

As some of the components of the wetland hydrology were not included in the model due to data limitations the results of the hydrological effects of the simulated scenarios have to be considered with caution. There is also scope to extend the model by going beyond the two wetland services considered in this study (crop production and biomass harvesting) and include other provisioning and regulating services provided by the wetland.

Because of the limitations imposed by the structure of the ecological-economic model, it was not possible to consider some important wetland management strategies in the simulation analysis. In light of the evidence shown by the given results that wetlands are a key resource for the livelihood of the poor especially in managing the effects of climate variability on agriculture, it is important to identify local level sustainable wetland management practices that farmers can use with minimum effects on wetland ecosystem conditions. Therefore, instead of focusing on external drivers and macro policies, there is need to improve the ecological-economic model presented here and expand the simulation analysis to include local level wetland management scenarios. The scenarios would then include alternative wetland crop and livestock management practices, which enables the identification of management practices that the rural people can use to enhance their economic well-being with minimum impacts on wetland ecological conditions.

The ecological-economic model can also be further improved by integrating social and institutional aspects with the presently modelled environmental and economic systems. Last but not least, future research can also consider the spatial aspects into the dynamic analysis presented here by looking at the ecological and economic effects of the alternative management regimes beyond the local level, to be able to understand the full consequences (off-site effects) of these regimes at a broader scale.

132



#### REFERENCES

- Abdulai, A. & Regmi, P. 2000. Estimating labor supply of farm households under nonseparability: empirical evidence from Nepal. *Agricultural Economics*, 22(3): 309–320.
- Acreman, M. 2001. Ethical aspects of water and ecosystems. *Water Policy*, 3: 257-265
- Adams, W.M. 1993. Indigenous Use of Wetlands and Sustainable Development in West Africa. *The Geographical Journal*, 159(2): 209-218.
- Adekola, O. 2007. Economic valuation and livelihood analysis of the provisioning services provided by Ga-Mampa wetland, South Africa. Unpublished M.A. thesis. Wageningen: Wageningen University.
- Adhikari, B. 2002. 'Household Characteristics and Common Property Resource Management: A Model for Households Dependency on Local Commons'. Paper presented at The Commons in an Age of Globalisation Ninth Conference of the International Association for the Study of Common Property. Victoria Falls, Zimbabwe, 17-21 June.
- Amaral, N. & Sommerhalder, N. 2004. The Limpopo River basin: Case study on Science and Politics of International Water Management.
- Barbier, E.B., Adams, W.M. & Kimmage, K. 1991. *Economic Valuation of Wetland Benefits: The Hadejia-Jama're Floodplain, Nigeria*. LEEC Discussion Paper, DP 91-02. IIED: London.
- Barbier, E.B. 1993. Sustainable use of wetlands valuing tropical wetland benefits: economic methodologies and applications. *Geogr. J.*, 159(1): 22–35.
- Barbier, E.B. 1994. Valuing environmental functions: Tropical wetlands. *Land Economics*, 70(2): 155-173.
- Barbier, E.B., Acreman, M. & Knowler, D. 1997. *Economic valuation of wetlands, a guide for policy makers and planners*. Ramsar Convention Bureau, Gland, Switzerland
- Barrett, C. B., Reardon, T. & Webb, P. 2001. Nonfarm income diversification and household livelihood strategies in rural Africa: concepts, dynamics and policy implications. *Food Policy*, 26(4): 315-331.



- Bartels, R. & Fiebig, D.G. 1991. A simple characterization of Seemingly Unrelated Regression Models in which OLS is BLUE. *The American Statistician*, 45(2): 137-140.
- Biggs, R., Bohensky, E., Desanker, P.V., Fabricius. E., Lynam, T., Misselhom, C., Musvoto, M., Mutale, B., Revers, R.J., Scholes, R.J., Shikongo, S. & Van Jaarsveld, A.S. (2004). *Nature Supporting People*. The Southern African Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, Integrated report. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria, South Africa, vii, 58.
- Brandon, K.E. & Wells, M. 1992. Planning for people and parks: Design Dilemmas. *World Development*, 20(4): 557-570.
- Breen, C.M., Quinn, N.W. & Mander, J.J. (eds). 1997. Wetlands conservation and management in southern Africa: Challenges and Opportunities, Summary of the SADC wetlands conservation survey reports. IUCN Wetlands Programme.
- Brouwer, R. & Van Ek, R. 2004. Integrated ecological, economic and social impact assessment of alternative flood control policies in the Netherlands. *Ecological Economics*, 50 (1-2): 1-21.
- Brouwer, R. & Hofkes, M. 2008. Integrated hydro-economic modelling: Approaches, key issues and future research directions. *Ecological Economics*, 66(1):16-22.
- Bullock, A. & Acreman, M. 2003. The role of wetlands in the hydrological cycle. *Hydrology & Earth System Sciences*, 7(3): 358-389.
- Campbell, B.M., Jeffrey S., Kozanayi, W., Luckert, M., Mutamba, M. & Zindi, C. 2002. *Household livelihoods in semi-arid areas, opportunities and constraints*. Jakarta: Centre for International Forestry Research.
- Chabwela, H.N. 1991. Wetlands: A conservation programme for southern Africa. Maseru/Harare: SADC and IUCN-ROSA.
- Chen, L., Heerink, N. & Van den Berg, M. 2006. Energy consumption in rural China: A household model for three villages in Jiangxi Province. *Ecological Economics* 58: 407–420.
- Chiputwa, B., Morardet, S. & Mano, R. 2006. Diversity of wetland-based livelihoods in Limpopo River basin. Paper presented at conference proceedings of the 7th WaterNet/WARFSA/GWP-SA Symposium, Lilongwe, Malawi, 1-3 November 2006.

- Chiron, D. 2005. Impact of the small-scale irrigated sector on household revenues of the black community of Ga-Mampa Valley (Ward of Mafefe): Contribution to the irrigation management transfer study of the small-scale irrigation schemes. Limpopo Province South Africa. Unpublished M.A. thesis. Montpellier: CNEARC.
- Chopra, K. & Adhikari, S.K. 2004. Environment Development Linkages: Modelling a Wetland System for Ecological and Economic Value. *Environment and Development Economics*, 9(1): 19-45.
- Collier, P. & Lal, D. 1986. *Labour and Poverty in Kenya: 1900-1980*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Costanza, R., Farber, C.S. & Maxwell, J. 1989. Valuation and management of wetland ecosystems. *Ecological Economics*, 1(4): 335–361.
- Costanza, R., Wainger, L., Folke, C. & Maler, K.G. 1993. Modelling complex ecological economic systems. *Bioscience*, 43(8): 545-555.
- Costanza, R. 1996. Ecological economics: Reintegrating the study of humans and nature. *Ecological Applications*, 6(4): 978-990.
- Costanza, R. & Gottlieb, S. 1998. Modelling ecological and economic systems with STELLA: Part II. *Ecological Modelling*, 112(2-3): 81-84.
- Costanza, R. & Ruth, M. 1998. Using Dynamic Modelling to Scope Environmental Problems and Build Consensus. *Environmental Management*, 22(2): 183–195.
- Cowan, G.I. (ed.). 1995. *Wetlands of South Africa*. Pretoria: Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism: 263-272
- Cowan, G.I. & Van Riet, W. 1998. *A directory of South African wetlands*. Pretoria: Penrose Press.
- Cowardin, L.M., Carter, V., Golet, F.C. & Laroe, E.T. 1979. *Classification of wetlands and deepwater habitats of the United States*. Washington: US Fish and Wildlife Service.
- Cox, M. 2005. Modelling the impacts of coastal condition on social and health aspects of human well-being: implications for coastal management, in *MODSIM 2005 International Congress on Modelling and Simulation*, edited by A. Zerger and R. M. Argent. Modelling and Simulation Society of Australia and New Zealand: 1944-1950.

- Darradi, Y., Grelot, F. & Morardet, S. 2006. Analysing stakeholders for sustainable wetland management in the Limpopo River basin: The case of Ga-Mampa wetland, South Africa. Paper presented at the 7th WATERNET/WARFSA/GWP-SA Symposium on mainstreaming IWRM in the development process, Lilongwe, Malawi, 1-3 November, 2006.
- Dayal, V. 2006. A Microeconometric analysis of household extraction of forest biomass goods in Ranthambhore National Park, India. *Journal of Forest Economics*, 12(2): 145–163.
- Department of Agriculture. 2009. Abstract of Agricultural Statistics. Directorate of Agricultural Statistics, Republic of South Africa.
- Démurger, S. & Fournier, M. 2006. Rural poverty and fuelwood consumption: Evidence from Labagoumen Township (China). Lyon: GATE, CNRS-Universite Lyon. Working paper.
- De Groot, R.S., Wilson, M.A. & Boumans, R.M.J. 2002. A typology for the classification, description and valuation of ecosystem functions, goods and services. *Ecological Economics*, 41(3): 393-408.
- Dini, J., Cowan, G.I & Goodman, P. 1998. South African National Wetland Inventory: Proposed wetland classification system for South Africa. Pretoria: Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.
- Dixon, A.B. & Wood, A.P. 2003. Wetland cultivation and hydrological management in eastern Africa: Matching community and hydrological needs through sustainable wetland use. *Natural Resources Forum*, 27(2): 117-129.
- Doorenbos, J. & Kassam, A.H. 1979. Yield Response to Water. Irrigation and Drainage Paper 33. Rome: FAO.
- Dovie, D. 2001. Woodland resource utilisation, valuation and rural livelihoods in the lowveld, South Africa. Unpublished MSc Dissertation. Johannesburg: University of Witswatersrand.
- Dugan, P.J. (ed.). 1990. Wetland Conservation: A Review of Current Issues and Required Action. Gland: IUCN: 94.
- Durand, W. 2008. Estimating crop water use for 19 Water Management Areas of South Africa using CROPWAT. Unpublished CEEPA project report. Pretoria: University of Pretoria.



- Dye, P.J., Jarmain, C., Le Maitre, D., Everson, C.S., Gush, M. & Clulow, A. 2008. *Modelling vegetation water use for general application in different categories of vegetation*. WRC report No. 1319/1/08. Pretoria: Water Research Commission.
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). 2004. [O]. Available: <a href="https://www.epa.gov/owow/wetland">www.epa.gov/owow/wetland</a> Accessed on: 28 July, 2009.
- Emerton, L., Iyango, L., Luwum, P. & Malinga, A. 1999. The net present value of Nakivubo urban wetland, Uganda. IUCN report.
- Eppink, F.V., Van den Bergh, J.C.M. & Rietveld, P. 2004. Modelling biodiversity and land use: urban growth, agriculture and nature in a wetland area. *Ecological Economics*, 51(3-4): 201–216.
- Fafchamps, M. & Quisumbing, A. 1998. *Human capital, productivity and labour allocation in rural Pakistan*. FCND Discussion Paper No 48., IFPRI, Washington DC.
- FAO. (2004). *Drought impact mitigation and prevention in the Limpopo River Basin:* A situation analysis. Land and water discussion paper 4. Rome: FAO.
- Farber, S., Costanza, R., Childers, D.L., Erickson, J., Gross, K., Grove, M., Hopkinson, C.S., Kahn, J., Pincetl, S., Troy, A., Warren, P. & Wilson, M. 2006. Linking Ecology and Economics for Ecosystem Management. *Bioscience*, 56(2) 121-133.
- Ferrand, P. (2004). Participatory diagnosis about Farming Systems and Social Management of Water in the Small-Scale Irrigation Scheme of the Mashushu Community, Limpopo Province, South Africa. Unpublished M.A.thesis. University of the North, South Africa.
- Ferraro, P.J. & Kramer, R.A. 1997. *Compensation and economic incentives: reducing pressure on protected areas.* Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Finlayson, C.M. & Moser, M. (eds). 1991. Wetlands: A global perspective. Oxford: Facts on File.
- Finlayson, C.M. & Van der Valk, A.G. 1995. Wetland classification and inventory: A summary. *Vegetatio*, 118(1-2): 185-192.
- Finlayson, C.M., Davidson, N.C., Spiers, A.G. & Stevenson, N.J. 1999. Global wetland inventory-current status and future priorities. *Marine Freshwater Res*, 50 (8): 717-727.

- Finlayson, C.M. & Spiers, A.G. (eds). 1999. Wetland Resources and Priorities for Wetland Inventory. Supervising Scientist Report 144. [CD-ROM]. Canberra, Australia.
- Fisher, M. 2004. Household welfare and forest dependence in southern Malawi. *Environment and Development Economics*, 9(2): 135–154.
- Fisher, M., Shively, G.E. & Buccola, S. 2005. Activity choice, labour allocation and forest use in Malawi, *Land Economics*, 81(4): 503-517.
- Forrester, J.W. 1968. *Principles of Systems*. Cambridge, MA: Productivity press.
- Frenken, K. & Mharapara, I. 2002. Wetland development and management in SADC countries. Paper presented at proceedings of a sub-regional workshop held in Harare, Zimbabwe, 19-23 November 2001.
- Freeman, M. 1993. *The measurement of Environmental and resource values: Theory and Methods.* Washington D.C.: Resources for the Future.
- Gambiza, J., Bond, W., Frost, P. & Higgins, S. 2000. Land use options in dry tropical woodland ecosystems in Zimbabwe: A simulation model of miombo woodland dynamics under different management regimes. *Ecological Economics*, 33(3): 353-368.
- Greene, W.H. 2003. Econometric analysis. Fifth edition. Prentice Hall, USA.
- Gregory, R., & Slovic, P. 1997. A constructive approach to environmental valuation. *Ecological Economics*, 21(3): 175-181.
- Güneralp, B., & Barlas, Y. 2003. Dynamic modelling of a shallow freshwater lake for ecological and economic sustainability. *Ecological Modelling*, 167(1-2): 115-138.
- Hein, L., Van Koppen, K., De Groot, R.S. & Van Ierland, E.C. 2006. Spatial scales, stakeholders and the valuation of ecosystem services. *Ecological Economics*, 57(2): 209-228.
- Hellden, U. 2008. A coupled human–environment model for desertification simulation and impact studies. *Global and Planetary Change*, 64(3-4): 158–168.
- Heltberg, R., Arndt, C. & Sekhar, N.U. 2000. Fuelwood Consumption and Forest Degradation: A Household Model for Domestic Energy Substitution in Rural India. *Land Economics*, 76(2): 213-232.

- Higgins, S.I., Turpie, J.K., Costanza, R., Cowling, R.M., Le Maitre, D.C., Marais, C.
  & Midgley, G.F. 1997. An ecological-economic simulation model of mountain fynbos ecosystems: Dynamics, valuation and management. *Ecological Economics*, 22(2): 155-169.
- Hirji, R., Johnson, P., Maro, P. & Matiza, T. (eds). 2000. *Defining and mainstreaming environmental sustainability in water resources management in southern Africa*. Washington D.C.: SADC, IUCN, SARDC, World Bank.
- Holden, S., Shiferaw, B. & Pender, J. 2004. Non-farm income, household welfare, and sustainable land management in a less-favoured area in the Ethiopian highlands. *Food Policy*, 29(4): 369-392.
- Igbadun, H., Tarimo, A.K., Salim, B.A. & Mahoo, H.F. 2007. Evaluation of selected crop water production functions for an irrigated maize crop. *Agricultural Water Management*, 94(2007): 1 10.
- IPCC. 2001. Climate Change 2001: Impacts, adaptation and vulnerability. Inter-Governmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Jolliffe, D. 2004. The impact of education in rural Ghana: examining labour allocation and returns to on and off the farm. *Journal of Development Economics*, 73 (1): 287-314.
- Jogo, W., Chiputwa, B. & Morardet, S. 2008. Understanding the diversity of wetland-based livelihoods in the Limpopo River basin. Paper presented at the International Society for Ecological Economics 10th Biennial Conference "Applying Ecological Economics for Social and Environmental Sustainability", Nairobi, Kenya: 7-11 August, 2008.
- Kipkemboi, J., Van Dam, A.A., Ikiara, M.M. & Denny, P. 2007. Integration of smallholder wetland aquaculture-agriculture systems (fingerponds) into riparian farming systems on the shores of Lake Victoria, Kenya: Socio-economics and livelihoods. *Geographical Journal*, 173(3): 257-272.
- Kleynhans, M.T. 2004. Hydraulic and hydrological modelling of the Nyl River floodplain for environmental impact assessment. Johannesburg: University of Witwatersrand.
- Kok, P. & Collison, M. 2006. *Migration and urbanization in South Africa*. Report 03-04-02, Statistics South Africa, Pretoria, South Africa.

- Kotze, D. C. 2005. An ecological assessment of the health of the Mohlapitsi wetland, Limpopo Province. South Africa. Centre for Environment, Agriculture and Development, University of KwaZulu-Natal.
- Kotze, D.C., Breen, C.M. & Quinn, N. 1995. Wetland losses in South Africa, in Wetlands of South Africa, edited by G.I. Cowan. Pretoria: Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism: 263-272.
- Laszlo, S. 2008. Education, Labor Supply, and Market Development in Rural Peru. *World Development* 36(11): 2421-2439.
- Lehner, B. & Doll, P. 2004. Development and validation of a global database of lakes, reservoirs and wetlands. *Journal of Hydrology (Amst,)* 296(1-4): 1-22.
- Masiyandima, M., Van Koppen, B. & McCartney, M.P. 2004. *Case Study Evaluation of Wetland Contributions to Livelihoods in Southern Africa*. IWMI Research Report.
- Masiyandima, M., McCartney, M.P., Fritsch, J.M. & Rollin, D. 2006. Impacts of agricultural use of the Ga-Mampa wetland on the hydrology of the wetland and the Mohlapitsi River. Paper presented at the Proceedings of the 7<sup>th</sup> Waternet/WARFSA/GWP-SA Symposium, Lilongwe, Malawi, 1-3 November 2006.
- Matiza, T. & Chabwela, H.N. 1992. Wetlands Management: A Critical Issue for Conservation in Africa. Paper presented at the Wetlands Conservation Conference for Southern Africa, IUCN, Mavuti, Tanzania.
- Matshe, I. & Young, T. 2004. Off-farm labour allocation decisions in small-scale rural households in Zimbabwe. *Agricultural Economics*, 30 (3): 175-186.
- McCartney, M.P. & Van Koppen, B. 2004. Wetland contributions to livelihoods in United Republic of Tanzania. Sustainable Development and Management of Wetlands. FAO -Netherlands Partnership Programme. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
- McCartney, M. P. 2005. *Technical Note: Hydrology of the Mohlapitsi catchment*. Pretoria: International Water Management Institute (IWMI).
- MEA (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment). 2003. *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: A framework for assessment*. Washington, D.C. World Resources Institute, Island press.

- MEA (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment). 2005. *Ecosystems and human well-being:* Wetlands and water. Synthesis. Washington, D.C.: World Resources Institute.
- Mgonja, M.A., Waddington, S., Rollin, D., & Masenya, M. (eds). 2006. Livelihoods in the Limpopo: CGIAR Challenge Program on Water and Food Project No.1. Paper presented at the Proceedings of the CPWFPN1 Inception Workshop, Polokwane, South Africa, 25-27 January 2006.
- Mitsch, W.J. & Gosselink, J.G. 2000. Wetlands. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Mmopelwa, G. 2006. Economic and financial analysis of harvesting and utilization of river reed in the Okavango Delta, Botswana. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 79(4): 329–335.
- Moser, M., Prentice, C. & Frazier, S. 1996. A global overview of wetland loss and degradation. Paper presented in Vol 10 Proceedings of the 6th meeting of the conference of Contracting parties, Brisbane, Australia, Ramsar Convention Bureau: Gland, Switzerland, 19-27 March, 1996.
- Mulugeta S., Abbot, P., Sishaw, T. & Hailu, A. 2000. Socio-Economic Determinants of Wetland Cultivation in the Metu and Yayu-Hurumu Weredas of Illubabor. Ethiopian Wetlands Research Programme, Project report, EWRP and The University of Huddersfield, Metu and Huddersfield.
- Mulugeta, S. 2004. Socio-Economic Determinants of Wetland Cultivation in Kemise, Illubabor Zone, Southwestern Ethiopia. *Eastern African Social Science Research Review*, XX(1).
- Narain, U., Gupta, S. & Van't Veld, K. 2008. Poverty and resource dependence in rural India. *Ecological Economics*, 66(1): 161-176.
- National Treasury of South Africa. 2008. *Provincial Budgets and Expenditure Review:* 2001/02 2007/08. Chapter 4: Social development. [O]. Available: <a href="https://www.finance.gov.za">www.finance.gov.za</a>. Accessed on: 1 June 2009.
- Pagiola, S., Von Ritter, K. & Bishop, J.T. 2004. Assessing the economic value of ecosystem conservation. Environment Department working paper No 101. Washington D.C.: World Bank.
- Portela, R. & Rademacher, I. 2001. A dynamic model of patterns of deforestation and their effect on the ability of the Brazilian Amazonia to provide ecosystem services. *Ecological Modelling*, 143(1-2): 115-146.



- Raes, D., Geerts, S., Kipkorir, E., Wellens, J. & Sahli, A. 2006. Simulation of yield decline as a result of water stress with a robust soil water balance model. *Agricultural Water Management*, 81(3): 335–357.
- Ramsar Convention Bureau, 1997. *The Ramsar Convention Manual: a guide to the Convention on Wetlands (Ramsar, Iran, 1971)*. Gland: Second Edition. Ramsar Convention Secretariat.
- Ramsar Convention Secretariat, 1971. Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat, Gland: Ramsar Convention Secretariat.
- Ramsar Convention Secretariat, 2004. Ramsar Handbooks for the wise use of wetlands. Second edition. Gland: Ramsar Convention Secretariat.
- Reardon, T. & Vosti, S. 1995. Links between rural poverty and the environment in developing countries: asset categories and investment poverty. *World Development*, 23(9): 1495–1506.
- Rebelo, L.M., McCartney, M. & Finlayson, C.M. 2009. Wetlands of Sub-Saharan Africa: distribution and contribution of agriculture to livelihoods. *Wetlands Ecology and Management (DOI 10.1007/s11273-009-9142-x) 16pp.*
- Ringler, C. & Cai, X. 2003. Addressing Environmental Water Values in an Integrated Economic-Hydrologic River Basin Modelling Framework. Paper presented at the proceedings of the workshop on 'Integrating Environmental Impacts into Water Allocation Models of the Mekong River Basin', Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam, 15 December.
- Richards, L.T. 2001. A guide to wetland identification, delineation and wetland functions. Unpublished M.A. thesis. Johannesburg: Rand Afrikaans University.
- Roggeri, H. 1995. Tropical Freshwater Wetlands—A Guide to Current Knowledge and Sustainable Management. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Rosenberg, M.T. 1999. Climate classification. [O]. Available: <a href="http://clem.mscd.edu">http://clem.mscd.edu</a>. Accessed on: 23 July 2007.
- Sadoulet, E. & De Janvry, A. 1995. *Quantitative development policy analysis*. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press.



- Sarron, C. 2005. Effects of wetland degradation on the hydrological regime of a quaternary catchment in the Mohlapitsi River, Ga-Mampa valley. Unpublished M.A. thesis. Rennes: Cecole Nationale Supérieure Agronomique de Rennes.
- SARB. 2009. [O]. Available: http://www.reservebank.co.za. Accessed on: 10 December, 2009.
- Saxton, K.E. & Rawls, W.J. 2006. Soil water characteristics estimates by texture and organic matter for hydrologic conditions. *Soil Science Society of America 70* (September-October): 1569-1578.
- Saysel, A. K., Barlas, Y & Yenigun, O. 2002. Environmental sustainability in an agricultural development project: a system dynamics approach. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 64(3): 247-260.
- Scholes, R.J., & Biggs, R. (eds). 2004. Ecosystem services in southern Africa: Regional assessment, A contribution to the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, prepared by the regional scale team of the Southern African Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. Pretoria: Council for Scientific and Industrial Research.
- Schuyt, K.D. 1999. *Economic Valuation of the Lake Chilwa Wetland*. Report for the Lake Chilwa Wetland and Catchment Management Project.
- Schuyt, K.D 2002. Land and water use of wetlands in Africa: Economic values of African wetlands. Interim Report IR-02-063. Laxenburg: International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis.
- Schuyt, K.D. 2005. Economic consequences of wetland degradation for local populations in Africa. *Ecological Economics*, 53(2): 177-190.
- Seyam, I.M., Hoekstra, A.Y., Ngabirano, G.S. & Savenije, H.H.G. 2001. *The Value of Freshwater Wetlands in the Zambezi Basin*. AWRA/IWLRI. Dundee: University of Dundee International Specialty Conference.
- Shackleton, C.M. & Shackleton, S.E. 2006. Household wealth status and natural resource use in the Kat river valley, South Africa. *Ecological Economics*, 57 (2): 306-317.
- Silvius M.J., Oneka, M. & Verhagen, N. 2000. Wetlands: Lifeline for people at the edge. *Physics and Chemistry of the Earth* 25(B): 645-652.
- Singh, I., Squire, L. & Strauss, J. 1986. *Agricultural Household Models: Extensions, Applications, and Policy*. London: John Hopkins.



- Statistics South Africa. 2004. *Census 2001: Primary tables Limpopo*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Stephenne, N. & Lambin, E.F. 2001. A dynamic simulation model of land-use changes in Sudano-sahelian countries of Africa (SALU). *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment*, 85(1-3): 145-161.
- Stevenson, N. & Frazier, S. 1999. Review of wetland inventory information in Africa, in *Global Review of Wetland Resources and Priorities for Wetland Inventory*. Supervising Scientist Report 144, edited by C.M. Finlayson and A.G. Spiers. [CD-ROM]. Canberra, Australia.
- Tarr, J.A., Van Rooyen, M.W. & Bothma, J.P. 2004. The response of phragmites australis to harvesting pressure in the Muzi swamp of the Tembe elephant park, South Africa. *Land Degradation and Development*, 15(5): 487-497.
- Taylor, A.R.D., Howard, G.W. & Begg, G.W. 1995. Developing wetland inventories in southern Africa: A review. *Vegetatio*, 118(1-2): 57-79.
- Thenya, T. 2006. Analysis of macrophyte biomass productivity, utilization and its impact on various eco-types of Yala Swamp, Lake Victoria Basin, Kenya. *Ecology and Development Series*, 48. Gottingen: Cuvillier Verlag.
- Tinguery, N. 2006. The interface between local community based wetland resources management and the formal wetland policies, laws and institutions in South Africa and Zambia. Unpublished M.A. thesis. Boston: University of Brandeis.
- Tiwari, D. N., Loof, R. & Paudyal, G.N. 1999. Environmental-economic decision-making in lowland irrigated agriculture using multi-criteria analysis techniques. *Agricultural Systems*, 60(2): 99-112.
- Turpie, J., Smith, B., Emerton, L. & Barnes, J. 1999. *Economic Value of the Zambezi Basin Wetlands*. IUCN Regional Office for Southern Africa. Zambezi Basin Wetlands Conservation and Resource Utilization Project.
- Turner, R. K., Van den Bergh, J.C.J., Soderqvist, T., Barendregt, A., Van der Straaten, J., Maltby, E. & Van Ierland, E.C. 2000. Ecological-economic analysis of wetlands: scientific integration for management and policy. *Ecological Economics*, 35(1): 7-23.
- UNDP (United Nations Development Programme). 2003. *Human Development Report 2003*. United Nations.



- Van Beukering, P.J.H., Cesar, H.C. & Janssen, M.A. 2003. Economic valuation of the Leuser National Park on Sumatra, Indonesia. *Ecological Economics*, 44(1): 43-62.
- Van den Bergh, J.C.M., Barendregt, A., Gilbert, A., Van Herwijnen, V. & Lorenz, C. 2001. Spatial economic hydro-ecological modelling and evaluation of land use impacts in the Vetch wetland area. *Environmental Modelling and Assessment*, 6 (2001): 87-100.
- Von der Heyden, C.J. & New, M.G. 2003. The role of a dambo in the hydrology of a catchment and the river network downstream. *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences*, 7(3): 339-357.
- Wickins, P. 1981. The Natives Land Act of 1913: A cautionary essay on the simple explanation of complex change. *South African Journal of Economics*, 49(2): 65-89.
- Woodridge, J. 2002. *Econometric analysis of cross-section and panel data*. London: The MIT Press.
- Woodwell, J.C. 1998. A simulation model to illustrate feedbacks among resource consumption, production, and factors of production in ecological-economic systems. *Ecological Modelling*, 112(2-3): 227-248.
- World Resources Institute. 2003. Watersheds of Africa: A06, Limpopo. [O]. Available: www.earthtrends.wri.org. Accessed on: 23 February 2010.
- Zhang, L. & Mitsch, J. 2005. Modelling hydrological processes in created freshwater wetlands: an integrated system approach. *Environmental Modelling & Software*, 20 (2005): 935-946.
- Zellner, A. 1962. An efficient method of estimating seemingly unrelated regressions and tests of aggregation bias. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 57 (298): 348-368.
- Zerger, A. & Argent, R.M. (eds). 2005. MODSIM 2005 International Congress on Modelling and Simulation. Modelling and Simulation Society of Australia and New Zealand: 1944-1950.



#### **APPENDICES**

## Appendix A1: First order conditions for the household optimisation model

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial L_{H}} = \lambda_{1} \frac{\partial X_{H}^{H}}{\partial L_{H}} - \lambda_{5} = 0 \tag{A1.1}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial L_G} = \lambda_2 \frac{\partial G_q}{\partial L_G} - \lambda_5 = 0 \tag{A1.2}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial L_{v}} = \lambda_{3} \frac{\partial V_{N}}{\partial L_{v}} - \lambda_{5} = 0 \tag{A1.3}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial L_o} = \lambda_4 W_o - \lambda_5 = 0 \tag{A1.4}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial Y_G} = \lambda_2 \frac{\partial G_q}{\partial Y_G} - \lambda_4 P_Y = 0 \tag{A1.5}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial N} = \lambda_3 \frac{\partial V_N}{\partial N} - \lambda_4 P_N = 0 \tag{A1.6}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial X_{M}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{M}} - \lambda_{4} P_{M} = 0 \tag{A1.7}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial X_{H}^{H}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{H}} \frac{\partial X_{H}}{\partial X_{H}^{H}} - \lambda_{1} = 0$$
(A1.8)

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial X_{H}^{S}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{H}} \frac{\partial X_{H}}{\partial X_{H}^{S}} + \lambda_{4} P_{H} = 0$$
(A1.9)

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial X_{H}^{P}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{H}} \frac{\partial X_{H}}{\partial X_{H}^{P}} - \lambda_{4} P_{H} = 0$$
(A1.10)

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial G_{q}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{G}} \frac{\partial X_{G}}{\partial G_{q}} - \lambda_{2} = 0 \tag{A1.11}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial V_N} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_N} \frac{\partial X_N}{\partial V_N} - \lambda_3 = 0 \tag{A1.12}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial G_{q}^{P}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{G}} \frac{\partial X_{G}}{\partial G_{q}^{P}} - \lambda_{4} P_{G} = 0$$
(A1.13)

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial G_{q}^{s}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{G}} \frac{\partial X_{G}}{\partial G_{q}^{s}} + \lambda_{4} P_{G} = 0$$
(A1.14)

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial V_{N}^{P}} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_{N}} \frac{\partial X_{N}}{\partial V_{N}^{P}} - \lambda_{4} P_{V} = 0 \tag{A1.15}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial V_N^S} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial X_N} \frac{\partial X_N}{\partial V_N^S} + \lambda_4 P_V = 0 \tag{A1.16}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \lambda_{1}} = X_{H}^{H}(L_{H}, \beta; \Omega) - X_{H}^{H} = 0 \tag{A1.17}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \lambda_2} = G_q(L_G, K_G, Y_G, \alpha) - G_q = 0$$
(A1.18)



$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \lambda_3} = V_N(L_V, N, \theta) - V_N = 0 \tag{A1.19}$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell / \partial \lambda_{4}}{\partial \lambda_{4}} = P_{H} X_{H}^{S} + P_{G} G_{q}^{S} + P_{V} V_{N}^{S} + L_{o} W_{o} + E - P_{M} X_{M} - P_{H} X_{H}^{P} - P_{G} G_{q}^{P} - P_{V} V_{N}^{P} - P_{Y} Y_{G} - P_{N} N = 0$$
(A1.20)

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \lambda_{5}} = L_{T} - L_{H} - L_{o} - L_{G} - L_{V} - L_{Z}$$
(A1.21)



#### Appendix A2: Logical rules for hydrological dynamics in the modelled wetland

Capillarity (CR<sub>t</sub>): Based on knowledge and reasonable assumptions by hydrologists working in the studied wetland, it is assumed that capillary rise only occurs when the groundwater level is less than 1m below ground level (ge = 719m) and capillarity is estimated at 30mm/month. Therefore the equation for capillarity is as follows:

$$CR_t = If (GWL_t > ge - 1) then (1*30*12) else 0$$
 (A2.1)

Groundwater seepage ( $GS_t$ ): Groundwater seepage is assumed to occur only if the wetland groundwater level is higher than the water level in the river and is modelled as follows:

$$GS_{t} = If (GWL_{t} < 718.5) then (0) else (2*2.5*30(((GWL_{t} - 710)^{2} - (Rs - 710)^{2}))) / 400$$
(A2.2)

Recharge from irrigation (IS): It is assumed that diverted irrigation water (DW) depends on the geometry of the diversion canal. According to Chiron (2005) the diverted irrigation water is estimated at 0.13 cubic metres per second, which we convert to cubic metres per year. As 94% of the diverted irrigation water is assumed to recharge the wetland, IS is modelled as:

$$IS_{t} = 0.94 * DW/(120 * 10)$$
 (A2.3)

DW=diverted irrigation water (in cubic metres per year) = (0.13\*3600\*24\*30)\*12



# Appendix A3: Wetlands-based livelihoods agronomic and socio-economic household questionnaire

Interview No:	
Name of Respondent	 
Name of Village:	 
Village Head	
Ward	 
Date:	 
Name of interviewer:	



# Section A: GENERAL <sup>20</sup>HOUSEHOLD INFORMATION (Human Assets)

A1 Please state the relationship of the respondent to the head of the household:
<b>KEY 1</b> 1.Head of household; 2.Wife; 3.Child; 4. Grandchild; 5.Parents; 6.Siblings; 7.Farm laborer; 8.Other members (includes household helpers)
A2 Household size:
A3 Can you please give the following information for all the household members starting with the household head

	Gender	Age	Relation to household head	Marital status	Number of years in education	Professional qualification/ training	Occupation/ activity	Residential status 1-stays home permanently 2-stays away permanently 3. stays home and away	Reason why member is not staying within the household
1									
2									
3									
4									
5									
6									
7									
8									
9									
10									
11									
12	Key 1.Male	T	use key 1	1: Married or		1.none	1. Permanently		1.Married
	2.Female	In years	above	l: Marned or living together 2: Never married 3: Previously married (divorced, separated, widowed 4: Not applicable (child < 16 years)		2. farming 3.carpentry 4.brickmaking 5.knitting and sewing 6.teacher 7. other (specify)	employed 2. Not permanently employed 3. Self employed 4. Full-time farmer 5. Farm laborer 6. Unemployed 7.student 8.Other (specify)		2. Working in farm, town or city 3. Working abroad 4. other

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>20</sup>A **household** is defined as all the persons registered on the same residential site. Children (even when older then 18) not staying at home anymore, but being registered at their parents address should be considered.

### Section B: Physical and Natural Asset Ownership and Access

#### B1. Productive assets

List productive assets that you have  $\Box$  No productive asset  $\Box$ 

Type of productive asset	Number owned and	How was it acquired? 1. Purchased 2.donated	When was it acquired? (year of
Use key 2	working	3.inherited 4. other (specify)	acquisition)

Key 2: 1.Hand hoes, 2.Shovel, 3.Plough, 4.Harrow, 5.Wheelbarrow 6.Sledge 7.Trailer/cart 8.Tractor 9.car, truck, lorry 10. Water storage 11. Fishing equipment 12.irrigation equipment 13 other (specify)

### B2. Domestic assets

List domestic assets that you own

T C		TT '/ ' 10	3371
Type of	Number owned and	How was it acquired?	When was it
domestic asset	working	1. purchased	acquired? (year of
Use key 3		2.donated	acquisition)
		3.inherited 4. other	
		(specify)	

Key 3: 1.Motorcycle 2.Bicycle 3.Radio 4.Television 5.Telephone 6.Sewing machine 7.Stove 8.Solar power 9.Fridge 10.Other (specify)

B3. Housing

What type of housing do you have?
☐ Mud bricks and iron roofed
☐ Mud bricks and grass thatched
☐ Mud bricks asbestos roofed
☐ Pole and dagga and grass thatched
☐ Cement bricks, iron roofed
How many rooms do you have in your homestead?

**B4.** Sanitation

What type of toilet do you have at your homestead?

1. No toilet 2. Pit latrine 3.ventilated pit latrine/blair toilet 4.flush toilet with septic tank

# 5. Water use

Which source of water do you use for the following activities during each season?

# i) Dry season:

Water for	Source (use key 4)	Location 1.homestead 2.dryland 3. wetland 4. downstream	Distance from homestead (in metres)	Water use on the spot at home elsewhere diverted
Drinking				
Cooking				
Washing clothes				
Bathing				
Sanitary use or ablutions				
Washing household utensils				
Building purposes				
Watering of small livestock(eg				
rabbits, poultry)				
Watering of large livestock				
Watering gardens				
Other specify				

Key 4 1.private tap within homestead or yard 2.neighbors tap 3. communal tap 4. borehole 5.spring 6.dam 7.well/pond/stagnant water 8.river/stream 9. other



# (ii) Wet season

Water for	Source	Location	Distance from	Water use
	(use key 4)	1.homestead	homestead (in	on the spot
		2.dryland	metres)	at home
		3. wetland		3.elsewhere
		4. downstream		4.diverted
Drinking				
Cooking				
Washing clothes				
Bathing				
Sanitary use or ablutions				
Washing household utensils				
Building purposes				
Watering of small livestock (eg				
rabbits, poultry)				
Watering of large livestock				
Watering gardens				
Other specify				

question for each source used for drinking and cooking)?
Very safe □ moderately safe □ not safe □
If not safe, why do you think it is not safe? Smell □ Colour □ Upstream pollution □ Unsafe use of the source □ Lack of protection □ Other (specify)
Do you treat the water (e.g. for drinking, or for other uses?) in any way? How?  Filtering through cloth □ Chloride □ Sand filter □ Boiling □ Other (specify)
4. Do you experience any disease, which you think is related to the poor quality of water? Ye □ No □
If yes, list the diseases
<del>-</del>
Who is affected in the family? Children under 5years ☐ School going children (between 5 and 15years of age) ☐ Adult females (>18years) ☐ Adult males (>18years) ☐ Everyone in the family ☐
How often did this happen during the last month? 6 months? Year?
How many days is the affected person (and family members) absent from income generating activities due to the illness in the past month?
Do you use any protective measures against malaria or diarrhoea? Yes □ No □
If yes, what protective measures do you use?



location, area, uses e.tc for the table below)

If yes specify

Location of plot	Number of	Total area	What	Mode of	Who in the
1. homestead	plots	(in acres	are the	acquisition	household
2. wetland		and	plots	(Key 6)	has access
3. dryland		hectares)	used		to this
4. irrigation			for?		land?(use
scheme			(Key 5)		Key 1)
5. other					

Key 5.Plots used as 1.Arable land 2.Grazing land 3.Garden 4.other

### Section C: Use of Wetland Resources

### C1. Wetland goods collection

Did you collect some plant materials or catch some animals in the wetland during the past cropping season?

Type of material	Yes	No	If yes specify which		vas it for	Was i	
			plants or animals (or	own cor	nsumption?	selling?	
			for which use in				
			case of water)				
				Yes	No	Yes	No
1. Domestic fire							
wood							
2. Edible plants							
3. Building material							
4. Medicinal plants							
5. Craft material							
6. Fish							
7. Animals							
8. Water							
9. Other							

Key 6. Mode of acquisition 1. Purchase 2. Resettled under Government program 3. Inherited 1 and 4. Land for all community members 5.other

Did you notic	ce any changes	in the availabi	lity of wetland	resources in			
the last 5 years?							
Yes □ No □							
If yes, for which resources?							
Resources Changes in supply of Changes in time spent on							
	resource?	Tr J	collection?				
	Increase	Decrease	Increase	Decrease			
1. Domestic fire wood				1			
2. Edible plants (wild)				+			
specify which							
plant							
3. Building material							
4. Medicinal plants				_			
5. Craft material							
6. Fish							
7. Game				_			
8. Water				_			
9.Other [indicate with one, two or three st	one * the immenter	and of the about all					
C3. Conflict about wetland use  Are there any conflicts or tensions about wetland use during the last 5 years?  Yes □ No □  If yes, elaborate (Who was involved? What was the reason of the conflict? Which resources are concerned?)							
Have some of these conflict Yes □ No □	tensions been/	resolved?					
If yes, elaborate (Who was involved? What was the reason of the conflict? Which resources are concerned? How was it resolved?)							
Are you satisfied with the way the conflict was resolved?  If not satisfied, how best do you think this could have been resolved?							
Section D: Livestock production							
Do you keep any livestock in y	your farm? Yes	□ No □					
If yes, answer the following questions							



## D1. Livestock products

### Living animals

Livestock categories	How many at the beginning of the last cropping season	How many born?	How many dead?	How many purchased?	How many sold?	How many used for own consumption?	How many exchanged? (+/-)	How many at the end of the last cropping season?
Cattle								
Donkeys								
Sheep								
Goats								
Poultry								
Rabbits								
Pigs								

Milk production	

Do you produce milk? Yes Li No Li
If yes, how many cows or goats that produce milk do you have at present?  CowsGoats
How much milk do they produce per day at present?  CowsGoats
Does the number of cows or goats producing milk vary over the year?  Cows Yes □ No □ Goats Yes □ No □

If yes fill the table below

	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	Aprıl	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
Cows												
Goats												

Does the quantity of milk per cow or goat vary over the year? Cows Yes  $\square$  No  $\square$  Goats Yes  $\square$  No  $\square$ 

If yes indicate in the table below the quantity produced per cow or goat

	(speci	fy unit		)								
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
Cows												
Goats												

What are the causes of the variation?

Which quantity of milk do you use each day for household consumption?Unit	?
Is the production enough all over the year to cover your needs? Yes □	No □



If not, when do you experience shortages?

Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Aug	Se
Reduce	or suppi	ress milk	nilk short consum mers	otion [	□ uantity bo	ught	pri	ice			
Buy mi	ilk from s	shop		quantity b	ought	pr	rice				
Other		specify_									
<u>Draugh</u>	ht power										
Do you	use som	e of you	r livestoc	k for plo	wing or tra	ansport? Y	es 🗆	No □			
If yes, l	how man	y animal	s and of	which ty	pe do you	use for this	s?				
	f animals			lumber	•		Use				
							1.Plow				
							2.trans				
							3. Othe	er (specif	iy)		
Cows											
Oxen											
Donkey	ys										
			use them		cropping s	eason for	your owi	n needs a	ind what	area	
	f animals				for transp	ort	Plowin	g			
				•	-		days		area		
Cows											
Oxen											
Donkey	ys										
	(Specify		)								
Do you	rent or l	end your	animal f	or plowi	ng or trans	port? Yes	□ No □	]			
**											
					copping sea						
Type o	of anima	IS	L	ays use	d for trans	sport	Plowin	ng			
							days		area		
Cows											
Oxen											
Donke	ys										
What d Cash Labour other		How mu	exchange ich for oi iny man-e	ne day?_	one day of	work?					
<u>Manure</u>	e produci	<u>tion</u>									
	collect t	he manu	re produc	ced by yo	our animals	for fertili	zing you	r plots?			

157

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA 2, collect manure produced If yes, from which animals : at night in the kraal) □ Cattle ☐ Goats/sheep □ Donkeys □ Pigs □ Poultry How many carts (or other mean of measure) of manure did you collect the last cropping On which crop and what area did you apply the manure? Do you exchange or give away manure to your relatives or neighbors? Yes □ If yes, how many carts during the last cropping season? What did you receive in exchange? Cash How much for one cart? Labour How many man-days for one cart? other specify Other livestock products No □ Did you get other animal product in the last cropping season? Yes □ If yes, specify, Which product?\_ From which animal? The quantity produced? For which use (sale, own consumption, exchange)\_\_\_\_ If sold or exchanged specify price or against what?\_\_\_\_\_ D2. Source of feed / grazing D11. Do you let your livestock graze in the wetlands? Yes  $\square$  No  $\square$ D12. If yes, indicate the periods when you let your livestock graze/browse in the wetlands?

	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	Apri l	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
Cattle												
Donkeys												
Goats												
Sheep									·			

Indicate on the map which part of the wetland you use for livestock grazing?

D13. If no, why?

D14. Which other grazing area do you use for your livestock? (locate them on the map)



D15. Indicate the periods w

	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·											
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
Cattle												
Donkeys												
Goats												
Sheep												

	D	o you co	ontrol gra	zing? Ye	s 🗆 No							
	If	yes, how	w?									
	D	16. Do y	ou cut g	rasses or	bushes to	o feed you	r livestocl	x? Yes □	]	No 🗆		
		yes speo hich pla										
			-		-	nd, wetland	_		e; locate o	on a		
	A		me of the				T,	1,,	T -	T	Ι.	
Oct		Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
	ar	nimals?							_			
		•	antity die	•								
	Н	ow muc	h time di	d you spe	ent in col	lection? (i	ndicate ur	nits)				
	W	ho in th	e househ	old did it	?						_	
	If	yes spec	cify			l your lives			No 🗆			
		here did a map]	•	tivate the	m? Dryla	and □, we	etland	□, irriga	ation sche	eme 🗆	locate	
	A	t what t	ime of t	he year?								
Oct		Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
	Fo	or which	and how	/ many ai	nimals?_	1						
	W	hat qua	ntity did	you harv	est?							
	Fo	or which	and how	/ many ai	nimals w	as the fora	ge used?_					
	W	hat is th	ne mode o	of distrib	ution? (fr	ee grazing	g, in the ki	raal)				
	[fe	or agricı	ıltural pr	actices fi	ll in a cro	op informa	tion sheet	:]				
	If	yes spec	cify	-		eding your						

1.OI	r which	and have	w money	animala	2									
Wh	hat is the	e mode	of distri	bution?	(free gr	razing,	in the kraa	ıl)		_				
Wh	hat quan	tity did	you use	?										
At	what tir	ne of th	e year is	s it used	?									
	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Ma	rch	April	May	June	July	Aug	g	Sept	
Но	w much	time do	o you sp	ent in h	arvestii	ng and	distributio	n? (State	units)_			_		
Wh	ho in the	househ	nold doe	s it?										
D1	9. Do y	ou expe	rience f	eed sho	tages?	Yes □	№ П							
	•		1101100 1	cca snoi	iuges:	1 C3 L	110							
	yes when restock		Mari	Das	Ica	Feb	Manal	A ra	Mar	T	T.,1	, A	\a	Carr
type		Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	reb	March	April	May	June	Jul	y P	Aug	Sep
- 71														
			+											
Ke	ow do yo	numbe												
Kee Sel Bu	ep same Il anima y feed	numbe	er of anii   	mals [	]									
Kee Sel Buy Oth	eep same Il anima y feed her (spe	e numbe ls □ cify)	er of anii	mals [	]									
Kee Sel Buy Oth D3 Wh	rep same all anima by feed her (specal). Lives hich sou	e numbe	er of anii	mals [	ase for	waterin	g your liv	estock d			oppin			
Kee Sel Buy Oth D3 Wh	rep same all anima by feed her (specal). Lives hich sou	e numbe	er of anii	mals [	ase for	waterin		estock d			oppin			
Kee Sel Buy Oth D3 Wh	rep same all anima by feed her (specal). Lives hich sou	e numbe	er of anii	mals [	ase for	waterin	g your liv	estock d			oppin;			
Kee Sel Buy Oth D3 Wh	eep same all anima by feed her (specal beach ich sou ason? (lo	e numbe  ls   cify)   tock wa  rce(s) o  cocate on	er of anii	do you u	use for ate dista	waterin	g your liv	estock dead)	uring the	e last cr	oppin;			
Kee Sel Buy Oth D3 Wh	eep same all anima by feed her (specal beach ich sou ason? (lo	e numbe  ls   cify)   tock wa  rce(s) o  cocate on	er of anii	do you u	use for ate dista	waterin	g your live	estock dead)	uring the	e last cr	oppin;	gp		
Kee Sel Buij Oth D33 Wh sea Ho	eep same all anima by feed her (specal beach ich sou ason? (lo	e number ls	ater f water a map c	do you tor indica	use for ate dista	waterin	g your live	estock dead)	uring the	e last cr	oppin;			
Kee Sel Buy Oth D3 Wh sea — Ho — Is t	this water	e number ls	ater f water a map c	do you or indicate o this so	use for ate distante	waterin	g your livem homest	estock d	uring the	e last cr	oppin;			
Kee Sel Buy Oth D3 Wh sea — Ho — Is t	this water	e numbe  ls   cify)   tock warce(s) o  cate on  bu have  er sourc  cient, w	ater f water a map c access t	do you or indicate o this so	use for ate distante	waterin	g your live m homest  es   l  ges?	estock dead)	uring the	e last cr	oppin;	g Auş	g	Sept

160



# D4. Livestock production costs

Did you buy feed for your livestock during the last cropping season? (including compleme	ent,
salt)	

What do you buy?	For which	When?	Quantity	Price	From whom?
buy?	animals?				
				100	
				(400)	

	Dry season	Wet season	Total
Cattle			
Donkeys			
Goats			
Sheep			
Do you rec	eall the length of fence all the total cost of in	nplement?	
•	days of family labor	•	
•	re labor for that?	•	
	many days and what		
How many fences?	days of family labor	did you spend during th	he last cropping season repairing
Did you his	re labor to repair fenc	es?	
		d what was the cost?	
Did you bu	y some inputs to mai	ntain the fence? If yes s	specify what and at what cost?
Did you ha	we any other costs for	r your livestock?	
<u>-</u>			

# D5. Livestock labor

How many persons of your household took care of livestock during the last cropping season? (if necessary distinguish per categories of livestock)

Categories of livestock	How many people?	Who in the household? [use key 1]	How many hours / day?	How many days / months?
Cattle				
Donkeys				
Sheep				
Goats	udition of			
Poultry	37			
Rabbits				
Pigs				
Total				

Did you hire other people to take care of your livestock? Yes □	No □
If yes, specify for which activity?	

How m	any peop	le?									
How m	any days	per pers	on?								
When?	When? [indicate number of man-days per month]										
Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Aug	Sept

At what price or exchanged against what?

Section E: Crop production

E1. Which crop did you grow during the last cropping season

		u grow aurii			eason		
Type of land		Area	Total	Qty sold	What was	Qty	Qty
1. wetland	crop	planted	output	(kg)	the price	consumed	retained
2. dryland	(use key	(ha)	(kg)	[3]	last	(kg)	(kg)
3. irrigation	7)	[2]	[3]		season?	[3]	[3]
scheme	[1]						
4. backyard							
garden							
5. other							
(specify)							
	_			_			

<sup>[1]</sup> If the same crop is grown in several types of land use as many rows as type of land where the crop is cultivated

Key 7: Types of crops grown – adapt the list of crops to the site

1. Rice	5.Bambara-nuts	9. Leafy vegetables	13. Peas	17. Madhumbe
2. Maize	6. Groundnuts	10. Onions	14. Sweet potatoes	18. Sugarcane
3. Sorghum	7. Soybean	11. Tomato	15. Potatoes	19. Citrus fruit
4. Barley	8. Rapoko	12. Sugar beans	16. Pumpkins	20. Banana
				21.other

### E2. Crop management practices

Repeat this sheet for each plot/crop and cropping season

Type of land:

162

<sup>[2]</sup> locate the plot on the map

<sup>[3]</sup> if the respondent cannot express the quantity in kg use any appropriate container (grade, basket, cart...) and then assess the weight of an average container



Cropping calendar: indicate with a line the time and duration of each operation

	arciiaa	. maic	atc wit	ii a iiiiv	c tile ti	ine and d	ununon	of eac	n open			
Operation	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.	Jan.	Feb.	March	April	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.
[operations pest control  How did your Tractor	l, 6. Ha	arvestin are the	g 7. pc	ost-har or the l	vest]			ling 4.	tertilit	y man	agemer	it 5.
Which seed box		ou use? proved				boug	ght norr	nal see	ds [			
How did yo	ou do tl	ne weed	ding? N	Manual		chei	mical					
Did you use	e fertili	zers? Y	es □	No E	3							
If yes which	h type?	miner	al		orga	anic		bo	oth [			
Did you ex	perienc	e any p	oroblen	ns of p	ests?	Yes □	No					
If Yes, plea	ise stat	e the ty	pe of r	ests ar	nd how	vou did	control	them				
Type of pest						ntrol used		Sev	erity of ry seven		m	
								2.m	oderate ot severe			
								2.m	oderate			
								2.m	oderate			
								2.m	oderate			
Did you rot	tate the	use of	pestici	des?	Yes □	No		2.m	oderate			
Did you ex	perienc	ce any p	oroblen	ns of c	rop dis	seases?	Yes □	2.ma 3.na	oderate			
•	perience  the typ	ce any p	oroblen	ns of c	rop dis	seases?	Yes □	2.ma 3.na N 1 Sev. 1.ve 2.ma	oderate t severe	proble.	m	
Did you ex	perience  the typ	ce any p	oroblen	ns of c	rop dis	seases? Y	Yes □	2.ma 3.na N 1 Sev. 1.ve 2.ma	oderate of severe  for □  erity of  ry severe oderate	proble.	m	
Did you ex	perience  the typ	ce any p	oroblen	ns of c	rop dis	seases? Y	Yes □	2.ma 3.na N 1 Sev. 1.ve 2.ma	oderate of severe  for □  erity of  ry severe oderate	proble.	m	



input use tuse one to	w for caci	· _			
Input category	Input name	Quantity used for	Unit	Price / unit	Origin
[use key 8]		the total area			[use key 9]
T7 0 1 1	11: 0 : 1 6 .:	1: 2 : 6 ::1:			-

Key 8: 1.seeds or seedlings; 2. mineral fertilizers; 3. organic fertilizers; 4. pesticides; 5. containers; 6.

packaging; 7.transport

Key 9: 1. farm production; 2. purchase; 3. gift from family or neighbor; 4. gift from government,

NGOs

#### Labour use

Labout use					
Task	How many family members	Who in the family? [use key 1]	How many days per family member?	How many hired laborers?	How many days per hired
					laborer?
Land preparation					
Planting, sowing					
Weeding [*]					
Fertility					
management [*]					
Pest control [*]					
Harvest [*]					
Post harvest					
processing,					
shelling, threshing					
Other (specify)					
Other (specify)					

[\*] if several operations of the same type indicate the total number of days

What w	as the total	production to	or this p	plot the I	last cropping	g season? (	specify	y the unit)
--------	--------------	---------------	-----------	------------	---------------	-------------	---------	-------------

What quantity did you keep for household consumption?

What quantity did you retain for next planting season?

What quantity did you sell?

To whom did you sell?

At what price did you sell?

Section F. Access to Markets, credit and support services

Dc	you .	have any	access t	to cred	it faci	lities?	Yes L	 No L	

If no, what is the major factor (s) hindering your access to credit facilities?

If yes, identify your major source (s) of credit in the past 5 years in the table below.

Source of credit	Major source of credit in the	Amount borrowed per annum	When was credit	Purpose of credit? (key 10)	Form of repayment (key 11)	Interest rate (additional amount paid back or %)
	past 5 years		taken			
	(tick)		(year)			
1. Individual lenders						
(relatives and friends)						
1. Individual lenders						
(not related to you)						
2. Farmer						
groups/organization						
3. Commercial banks						
4. Retailers						
5. NGO						
6. Government						
department						
7.Local municipality						
8. Other (specify)						

Key 10: 1. Purchase agricultural inputs 2. Purchase farm equipment 3. Purchase of livestock assets 4. Purchase building materials 5. domestic assets 6. family events 7. Other (specify) Key 11: 1. Cash 2. Livestock 3. Labor 4. Other (specify)

ney 11. 1. easin 2. Elivestock 3. Eason 1. other (speerly)

For the sources of credit not used, what factors hinder you from using this credit facility? (key 12)

Key 12: 1. No credit is given by this source 2. Credit from this source is not easily accessible 3. Delays in processing of money 4. Lack of information on how the credit facility operates 5. Lack of trust 6. Lack of collateral 7. high interest rate 8. Length of credit not adapted 9. Other (specify)

165

#### F.2. Access to Markets

	Do you have access to markets for these items?  1. Yes 2. No	Main market used in the past 5 years (Key 13)	Distance of market from the village?	Do you have access to market information? (*) 1. Yes 2. No	What are the sources of market information? (Key 14)
Agricultural outputs					
Field crops					
in wetland					
in other land					
Horticultural crops					
in wetland					
in other land					
Other crops (specify)					
in wetland					
in other land					
Non-agricultural wetland					
resources					
Fish					
Reeds (including their					
processed products)					
Thatching grass					
Wild edible fruits					
Wild animals					

<sup>(\*)</sup> prices, where and when to get supplies, product characteristics

Key 13: 1. Consumers in the village 2. Consumers in other villages in the locality 3. Local retailers 4. wholesalers/supermarkets 5. Farmer cooperatives/groups 6. Hotels and restaurants 7. Collection centres (GMB) 8. Processors 9. Others (specify)

Key 14: 1.Other people in the village 2. Farmer organizations/co-operatives 3. Local retailers 4. Radio programs 5. Newspapers 6. Extension officers 7. Wholesalers/supermarkets 8 Other (specify)

What are the major advantages of using these markets compared to others?	

What are the main problems /limitations of using these markets?

List the markets you use for the following agricultural inputs

Agricultural inputs	Do you have access to markets for these items?  1. Yes 2. No	Main market used in the past 5 years (Key 15)	Distance of market from the village?	Do you have access to market information? (*) 1. Yes 2. No	What are the sources of market information? (use key 14)
Seeds					
Pesticides					
Fertilizers					
Animal feeds					
Farm implements					

<sup>(\*)</sup> prices, where and when to get supplies, product characteristics

Key 15: 1. Other farmers in the village 2. Local retailers 3. Farmer cooperatives/groups 4. wholesalers/supermarkets 5. NGOs 6. Government 7. Other (specify)

What are the major advantages of using these markets compared to others?

	TONIBES	THE TA PRETORIA	
What are the m	ain problems /limitations of us	ing these markets?	
F3. Access to	extension and other support	services	
Do you have ac	cess to extension services? Yes	s □ No □	
If no, explain w	hy?		
If yes, how man	ny times did the extension agen	nt visit you in the last six me	onths?
What kind of ac	lvice do you get from the exter	nsion agents?	
Do the extension	n agents advice you on specific	c aspects on wetland manag	gement?
Yes □ No	) <u> </u>		
If yes, what asp	ects of wetland management d	o they advice on?	
Fill in the table	below on household access to	other support services	
Services	Is the service available in the area? 1. Yes 2. No		Reasons for not using the service (Key 16)

Services	Is the service available in the area? 1. Yes 2. No	Do you use it or have you used it in the past 5 years?  1. Yes 2. No	Reasons for not using the service (Key 16)
Public transport			
Private transport			
Savings			
Health services			
Educational services			
Other government support services (specify)			
Private (NGO) service support programs (specify)			
Other (specify)			

Key 16: 1. I don't require the s YUNIBESITY OF PRETORIA and I am not part of the group 3. Service is too expensive 4. Quality of service not to standard 5. Other (specify)

F.4. Membership to social groups Is there any member of the household belonging to a social group or network? Yes □ No □ Who in the household is a member of this group and what is his/her relationship to household (repeat questions which follow for every household member who belongs to a social group) Type of social group the household member belongs to? Farmer association Credit or savings group □ Professional association □ Wetlands committee Other village committee □ Burial society Other (specify) Does the person hold a particular position within the social group? Yes □ No □ If yes, what is the position held? How active is the member in the social grouping? How many times per year does the person participate in the meetings of the social group? What are the benefits of joining this social group? When there is a decision to be made in this organisation/group, how does this usually come about? Leader imposes decision without consultation of other group members Leader decides and informs other group members Leader consults other members of the group first and then makes a decision Group members make a decision together Other (specify)  $\square$ 

G1. What are the different sources of income available to your household? State the amount you receive from every source per month or during the last cropping season.

Key 1. 1.Head of household; 2.Spouse; 3.Child; 4. Grandchild; 5.Parents; 6.Siblings; 7.Farm laborer;

8.Other members (includes household helpers)

		d helpers)	1		1
Form of incom e 1.cas h 2.kin d	Who earns the income? Use key 1.	How long have they been engaged in this activity?	Average amount per month	Average amount for the last cropping season	Is it a regular or once-off income? If once-off what is the period of earning?
	incom e 1.cas h 2.kin	of earns the income? e Use key 1.cas h 2.kin	of earns the income? e Use key 1.cas h 2.kin	of earns the income? Use key 1. cas h 2.kin earns the income? Use key 1.	of earns the income? Use key 1. cas h 2.kin earns the income? Use key 1. cas h 2.kin earns the income? Use key 1. cas h 2.kin earns the income? engaged in this activity? amount per month cropping season income? engaged in this activity?

Among these sources of income which ones are the most variable?

What are the main causes of variability?



#### G2. Household budget

How is the average annual income (in cash) distributed among the following categories of expenses?

[use 25 or 50 stones or sticks to represent the total annual income and ask the respondent to distribute them among seasons and then among categories of expenses. Use cards with drawing to represent the various categories of expenses]

Categories of expenses	Wet season	Dry season
Basic food (oil, salt)		
Other food		
House		
Clothing		
House		
Religious expenses		
Family & social events		
School fees & uniforms		
Health		
Crop inputs		
Livestock inputs		
Livestock		
Farm implements		
Domestic assets (specify)		
Electricity		
Water		
Savings		
Misc.		

### G.3 Food supply and security

These questions should preferably be asked of the person responsible for food preparation or of another adult who was present permanently and ate in the household during the reference period

#### F3.1. Number of eating occasions

During the previous 24-hour period, did you or anyone in your household consume...

Eating Occasion	Yes	No
Any food before a morning meal		
A morning meal		
Any food between morning and midday meals		
A midday meal		
Any food between midday and evening meals		
An evening meal		
Any food after the evening meal		
Number of eating occasions for the household (per day)		

#### G3.2 Food diversity

These questions refer to the household as a whole, not any single member of the household

Now I would like to ask you about the types of food that you or anyone else in your household ate yesterday <u>during the day and at night</u>. Please include the food prepared and consumed at home and the food prepared at home and consumed outside.

G3.3.1	Was yest	terday a normal	day for the h	nousehold (e.	g., no fune	ral or feast	or special
event)?	Yes □	No □					



If No, choose another day of the previous week that was normal

G3.3.2 Did you or anyone else in the household ate yesterday...

Read the list of food groups. Place a 1 in the box if anyone in the household ate the food in question; place a 0 in the box if no one in the household ate the food

1. Any bread, rice noodles, biscuits or any other food made from millet, sorghum, maize, rice, wheat? [Cereals]	
2. Any potatoes, yams, manioc, cassava, or any other foods made from roots or tubers? [Roots and tubers]	
3. Any vegetables?	
4. Any fruits?	
5. Any beef, pork, lamb, goat, rabbit wild game, chicken, duck, or other birds, liver, kidney, heart, or other organ meats? [Meat]	
6. Any eggs?	
7. Any fresh or dried fish or shellfish?	
8. Any foods made from beans, peas, lentils or nuts? [Pulses / legumes / nuts]	
9. Any cheese, yoghurt, milk or other milk products?	
10. Any foods made with oil, fat or butter?	
11. Any sugar or honey?	
12. Any other foods, such as condiments, coffee, tea?	
Total number of food groups [from 0 to 12]	



G3.4. For each type of food indicate how much you require for your household per month. Then indicate the main sources of this type of food during the last cropping season

[Give the respondent ten stones or sticks and ask him/her to distribute them according to the main sources of food for cereals. Then repeat the question for each type of food. Use a table with explicit drawings to represent the different sources of food]

Type of food	How much do you require for the household per month	Unit	01. Purchase	02. Household production from wetland	03. Household production from other land	04. Wild food from wetland	05. Wild food from other land	06. Gift	07. Government or NGO program	08. Other	99. Don't know
1. Cereals											
2. Roots/tubers											
3. Legumes											
4. Fruits											
<ol><li>Vegetables</li></ol>											
6. Milk/milk											
products											
7. Eggs											
8. Meat											
9. Fish											



				-	-		usehold's ease thinl			_		nonths of
G3.5.1. your fa				s were		months	in which	you did	not hav	ve enou	gh food	to meet
			were th		ths (in	the las	t 12 mon	ths) in w	hich yo	ou did no	ot have	enough
Aug.	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Total nb of months
that mo	onth as	s one i	n whic	h the h	ouseh	old did	put a 1 in l not hav d shortag	e enou				dentifies needs
Section	Н. Но	usehol	d Perce	ptions o	on We	tland M	Ianageme	ent and I	Human `	Well-Be	eing	
In your wetland		pinion,	, do you Yes			have s No □	ufficient	understa	nding o	n mana	gement	of
If yes,	what ar	e the n	nain sou	rces of	inforr	nation	on wetlar	nd mana	gement	in the a	rea?	
What a	spects (	of wetl	and ma	nageme	ent do	these so	ources co	ver?				
Do you underst		this inf Yes			uately	covers	the wetla	and man	agemen	t issues	people	need to
If no, w	hat asp	pects of	f wetlan	ıd mana	agemei	nt do y	ou think p	people n	eed furt	her elab	oration	on?
In your	own o Yes □		, do you No		degrad	ation o	f wetland	resourc	es is a p	oroblem	in the	area?
If yes, varea?	what do	o you t	hink are	the pro	oximat	te cause	es of degr	radation	of wetla	and resc	ources in	n your



In what ways is degradation of wetland ecosystems affecting the well-being of peoparea?	ple in your
How do you cope with the effects of wetland degradation on your well-being?	
In general, what are the major factors constraining the use of wetlands for supporting your area?	ng livelihoods
What do you think should be done to improve management of wetlands so that the continues to derive benefits from them?	community
Is there any information that you think would be useful for the research project?	

Thank you for your cooperation



# Appendix A4: Household questionnaire used for economic valuation of provisioning services of the Ga-Mampa wetland

Source: Adekola (2007)							
Section 1 Interview No:							
Name of Respondent:							
Sex:	Male [	]	Female	[	]		
Age/ Year of Birth:							
Marital Status: Married	d [	] Single [		] Divor	ced [	] Wido	owed [
Educational Level:							
Main Occupation:							
Number in Household:							
Monthly Household Income							
Position in Household:(In relation to head of household							
Name of Village:							
Date/ Time Begin:							



# **Section 2**

1. How	long have you been staying in this village? From Birth [ ] Years [ ]	
2. Do y	ou derive any benefits from the wetland? Yes [ ] No [ ]	
3. Do y	ou own a plot in the wetland? Yes [ ] No [ ]	
4. Whic	h of the following activities have you ever used the wetland for in the past?	
	[ ] Cropping	
	[ ] Grazing	
	[ ] Edible plant collection	
	[ ] Building material collection	
	[ ] Arts and craft materials collection	
	[ ] Fuelwood collection	
	[ ] Fishing	
	[ ] Hunting	
	[ ] Drinking water	
	[ ] Water for washing	
	[ ] Water for bathing	
	[ ] Others (Specify)	
5. Whic	h of these have you used the wetland for in the last one year?	
	[ ] Cropping	
	[ ] Grazing	
	[ ] Edible plant collection	
	[ ] Building material collection	
	[ ] Arts and craft materials collection	
	[ ] Fuelwood collection	
	[ ] Fishing	
	[ ] Hunting	
	[ ] Drinking water	
	[ ] Water for washing	
	[ ] Water for bathing	
	Others (Specify)	
6. Did	you give out your plot (all or part) to another person to use either for cropping or grazin	g
in the la	st year? Yes [ ] No [ ]	
7. If yes	s for what purpose?	
	much/ what did you collect in exchange?	
	If yes to any in 5 above, then please go to the relevant section in Appendix	

If yes to any in 5 above, then please go to the relevant section in Appendix.

9. Which other benefit(s) (apart from those listed above) do you derive from the wetland?

Regulation	Supporting	Cultural

10. Which benefits apart from those listed above are you aware of? Regulation Supporting Cultural 11. Apart from livelihood resource generated from wetland use, what other sources of income do you have? (List) Importance | Livelihood Resource Source Livelihood Resource Source Importance 12. From list above indicate importance in terms of contribution to household resources with asterisk (pebbles or beans) 13. Are you satisfied with the current benefits you derive from the wetland? Yes 1 No[ ] 14. Please explain your answer\_\_\_\_\_ 15. Have you received information on how to use the wetland so you can derive better benefits? Yes 1 No ſ 1 16. If who information? yes, provided the 17. Through which medium? 18. Have you received any training on how to best use the wetland to benefit you? Yes [ ] No [ 19. If yes, explain 20. Overall, how important is the wetland to you? | Extremely Important (5) | Very Important (4) ſ ] Important (3) | Fairly Important (2) ] Not Important (1) 21. Please, can you kindly provide name(s) of other person(s) known to you using the wetland for the following purpose(s). Cropping \_\_\_\_\_ ] Grazing \_\_\_\_\_ Wild plant collection \_\_\_\_\_ Building material collection \_\_\_\_\_ Arts and craft materials collection \_\_\_\_\_ Fuelwood collection \_\_\_\_\_ Fishing \_\_\_\_\_ Hunting Drinking water \_\_\_\_\_ Water for washing ] Water for bathing Others (Specify)



20	Time	Fnd			
40.	1 11110	Lilu			

#### **Section 3**

A C	•					Section	3					
A. Cro									. •	10		* 7
1.		_	-				-	ctivity in the				
2.	How n in?	nany ho	ouseho	olds do yo	ou ki	now to be	inv	olved in cro	pping	activity	in the	wetland
Ma	ashushu	, N	lapag	ane .	Ma	ntlane	, M	Ioila, C	Genera	ા		
						se for cropp						
						 Bamba						
4.			•					ast two crop	ning s	seasons?	Yes [	1 No [ ]
5.	Has your wetland farmland size changed in the last two cropping seasons? Yes [ ] No [ ] Did the size of your farmland in the wetland change in the last five Years? Yes [ ] No [ ]											
6.			-					resently loc				] - · ~ [ ]
7.			•	-			_	om home)?	acca 11		uiia.	
[								sport, [ ] P	ublic '	Fransport		
		_						ne?		_		(Hours)
9.		•				? Yes [] No						_(110 0115)
	-			-			_	_				
	-	-	_					p besides th	e wet	and area?	Yes [	1 No [
								escribe)				
								] I pa				
								e wetland els				
	•	-		•		•		escribe)		_	11.0	LJ
	•						•	e [ ]				1
	_(ZAR							- [ ]		P 7 L		J
17.		·	e of	the wetla	ınd,	how will	you	meet the	croppi	ng contr	ibution	n of the
	wetlan						to		11	C		your
												•
18.								shortage in	the w	etland? Y	es [	] No [ ]
	-	•		•		•	_	hat did you o			_	
	-							per farming				
		ar 1 (20								Year 3 (20	005/20	006)
		•		Season		`		ry Season		Season		Season
								J				
21	What v	vas voli	r viel	d for these	cro	ns?						
Cro				2003/2004		<u> </u>	2 (	2004/2005)		Year 3	(2005/	2006)
CIV	-	Wet	11 (2	Dry Seas		Wet	2 (2	Dry Season	n W		_	Season
		Season		Dry Scar	5011	Season		Dry Scason		ason	Diy	Scason
	- '	Jeason				Scason			30	u3011	1	
											+	
າາ	Цот	unob oro	NOU	willing to	ho =	oid to in 1:	01: 0	of your cropp	nina =	aht in the	wotla	nd
	. ноw п . Once p		•	willing to	ue p	aiu w III ll	eu (	n your cropp	(ZAR	•	wend	iiu
		•		na (indiaa	o bo				(ZAK	J		
<i>∠</i> 4,	24. Over a period of time (indicate below)											



Year			
Amount			

# Repeat this sheet for each plot/crop for each cropping season in the last year.

Crop type: season:	Size of	Size of plot used					Cropping	
<ol> <li>How did         Tractor         □     </li> </ol>	l you prepare the  □	e land for the sea donkey	nson? □	hoe		did	not	cultivate
2. Which s Farm seed	eed did you use's	? normal seeds		bought	improve	ed variet	у	
3. Did you	do weeding? Y	es □ No □						
4. How die	l you do the wee	ding? Manual		Chemi	cal			
5. Did you use fertilizers? Yes □ No □								
6. If yes which type? Mineral □ Organic □ Both □								
7. Did you	experience any	problems of pes	ts? Ye	es 🗆	No □			
8. If Yes, 1	olease state the ty	ype of pests and	how y	ou did co	ntrol the	m		
Гуре of pest	Crop affected	Method of cont used		Estimated cost of control		Severity of problem 1.very severe, 2.moderate, 3.not severe		
9. Did you experience any problems of crop diseases? Yes □ No □  10. If yes state the type of diseases and how you did control them								
Type of	Crop affected	Method of con	trol	Estimated			•	problem
disease		used		of control		1.very s 2.mode severe	severe, erate, 3.n	not

# 11. Input used [use one row for each type of input]

Input category	Input name	Quantity used for	Unit	Price / unit	Source
Input category [use key 2]		the total area			[use key 3]

**Key 2**: 1.seeds or seedlings; 2. mineral fertilizers; 3. organic fertilizers; 4. pesticides; 5. containers; 6. packaging; 7.transport; 8. Others

Key 3: 1. farm production; 2. purchase; 3. gift from family or neighbor; 4. gift from government, NGOs

### 12. Implement used [use one row for each type of input]

	1	,	_		T		ı	
Implement	Input name	Quantity	used	Source	Price / unit	Length of	Estimated	Life
category		for the total	area	[use		Use	length	of
[use key 4]				key 5]			Implement	

Key	y <b>4</b> : 1.Tractors; 2	2. Hoes; 3.	Cutlass; 4.	Wheel Barrow:	5. Spade:	6. others;
-----	----------------------------	-------------	-------------	---------------	-----------	------------

Kev 5: 1	Farm production: 2.	Purchase: 3	Gift from	family or	neighbor: 4	Gift from	government
----------	---------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

_	NGOs. 6. Hire (from who?	\ 7 D
Э.	. NGOS. D. HIFE CITOM WNO?	) 7 Borrow

#### 13. Labor use

Task	Period	How many	Who in	the	How many	How many	How many days	Cost of labor
	operation	family	family?		days per	hired	per hired	
	was done	members	[use key 1]		family	laborers?	laborer?	
					member?			
Land								
preparation								
Planting,								
sowing								
Weeding [*]								
Fertility								
management								
[*]								
Pest control [*]								
Disease Control								
Harvest [*]								
Transport of								
Harvest								
Post harvest								
processing,								
shelling,								
threshing								
Other (specify)								

Key 1 1.Head of house	_		Grandchild;	5.Parent	s; 6.Sib	lings; 7.Farm
laborer; 8.Other members		_				
[*] if several operations of				-	_	
14. Can you indicat	te average time y	ou personall	y spend or	your fa	ırm in	the following
months?				_		37
Oct Nov Time Per	Dec Jan F	eb Mar	Apr May	Jun	Jul	Aug Sept
Person						
Average						
number of						
persons						
15. Did you loose an	y part of your yiel	ld to flood, th	ieves etc be	fore harv	esting?	Yes [] No[]
·						
16. If yes, what quan	ntity?					
Crop	Reason for Lo	st	Quan	tity Lost		
(Type)						
17. What was the tot	al yield for this cr					
Crop (Type)	Size of plot used	I	Quantity of y	yield		
		1000				
		813				
18. Did you loose an	• •	d after harve	sting? Yes [	] N	o [	]
19. If yes, what quan	ntity?				_	
Crop (Type)	Reason for L	ost	Quantit	y Lost		
20. What quantity of	this yield did you	use for hous	ehold consu	mption?		
Crop type		Q	uantity			
21. What quantity di	d you give out?	side l				
Crop type		Q	uantity			
		7	·			
22. What quantity di	d you retain for ne	ext planting so	eason?			
Crop type		Q	uantity			
23. What quantity di	d you exchange?	l .				
Crop type		ity exchange	d	Excha	nged fo	r
1 4						
24. With whom did y	vou exchange?					
25. Did you pay any		exchange? Y	es [	] N	o [	]
Jan Pagaman		<i>6</i>	L	,		•

	did you s	Quantity		P	Price per unit			
Crop type		<i>Essure</i>			P			
28. To whom did y	ou sell?			1				
29. Where did you		e. local market,	outside mark	et)?				
30. Did you transpo	ort to the	market? Yes [	] No	[ ]				
31. If yes, how much	ch did th	e transport cost	)					
32. In the last one y				<u> </u>				
Crop type		Highest Price	When	Lowest	Price	When		
_			(Period)			(Period)		
22 G		11.11						
33. Can you provid			_		-	•		
Period	Pri	ce	Period	Period		Price		
24 1171-4 -41	1 11. 1			(1: 4)21				
34. What other pro		-				$\neg$		
Product		Product	1	Product		_		
35. What else do yo	on do mis	th most of vous	i al d 2					
33. What cisc do yo	ou do wi	in part or your y	iciu:					
•								
·								
·	S							
·	5							
General Questions		penefits from cr	opping in the	wetland in th	e past f	ive years?		
General Questions  1. How will you d	lescribe t				e past f	ive years?		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D	lescribe t		ng, [] No Ide			ive years? ge? (exp		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D	lescribe t	g, [] Not changi	ng, [] No Ide	ea		-		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D  2. What (indicated)	lescribe t ecreasing ator) (	g, [ ] Not changi did you us	ng, [ ] No Ide se to su	ea ggest this	chan	ge? (exp		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D  2. What (indicated)	lescribe t ecreasing ator) (	g, [] Not changi	ng, [ ] No Ide se to su	ea ggest this	chan	ge? (exp		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D  2. What (indicated)  ———————————————————————————————————	describe the decreasing ator) of impact	g, [ ] Not changi did you us	ng, [ ] No Ide se to su	ea ggest this	chan	ge? (exp		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D  2. What (indicated)  ———————————————————————————————————	lescribe tecreasing ator) of impac	g, [] Not changi did you us	ng, [] No Ide se to su g activity is h	ea ggest this aving on the	chan	ge? (exp		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D  2. What (indicated)  3. Are you aware  ]  4. If yes, please expected in the last 2 years.	describe the decreasing ator) of impacting the decreasing at the d	g, [] Not changidid you us	ng, [] No Idese to sugar activity is h	ea ggest this aving on the	chan	ge? (exp		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D  2. What (indicate of the content of t	describe to ecreasing ator) of impacting the ears (and	g, [] Not changidid you us  ets your cropping  I maybe years [	g activity is h	ggest this aving on the	chan	ge? (exp		
General Questions  1. How will you de  [ ] Increasing, [ ] De  2. What (indicate of the content	describe to ecreasing ator) of impacting the ears (and	g, [] Not changidid you us  ets your cropping  I maybe years [	g activity is horior) have you	ggest this aving on the	chan	ge? (exp? Yes [ ] 1 ameliorate		
General Questions  1. How will you d  [] Increasing, [] D  2. What (indicated)  3. Are you aware  3. If yes, please eximpact(s)? Yes	describe to ecreasing ator) of impacting the ears (and	g, [] Not changidid you us  ets your cropping  I maybe years p  ] No [  you taken (pers	g activity is h  prior) have y  onally) to receive.	aving on the outdone anythic impact s	chan	ge? (exp? Yes [ ] 1 ameliorate		
General Questions  1. How will you do  [ ] Increasing, [ ] Do  2. What (indicated)  3. Are you aware  3. Are you aware  4. If yes, please eximpact(s)? Yes  6. If yes what active	describe to ecreasing ator) of impacting a continuation and the continuation of the co	g, [] Not changidid you us  ets your cropping  I maybe years p  ] No [  you taken (pers	g activity is horior) have you	ggest this aving on the ou done anythic impact s	chan	ge? (exp		

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>21</sup> If any ascertain cost and amount made from this.



	No []		•			·			on to an			-	
	How		much	die		this		vity	cost		he		nunity?
		cts? Y	2 year		ny ext	ernal o	 rganiza	tion ta	ken any	action	ı to an		e these zation?
14	What	did tl	ney do?								_		
	How		-	nuch		did		it			ost		them?
2. 3. 4.	How How Mash know	long l many nushu ' ch type	nave yo	u been olds do Iapagai nts do y	you ki	now to _, Mant ect from	be invo lane	olved in , Mo	ble plan this act oila (List) lant Typ	ivity in , Gene	the wo	etland?	ı't
<ul><li>6.</li><li>7.</li><li>8.</li></ul>	How How What	long o	people do each total q	involve spend? uantity	ed in th	le collect	etion pe	er mont					
		_				_	-		nts did y			-	
		Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Freq. of Collection Quantity	on /												
collected													
		ribe a plant)		ity of ea	ach typ	e of pla	nt in th	e wetla	ınd relat	ion to f	arming	g season	s (for
		Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Availabi	ility												
Harvesti period	ng												
		_			-	_	_		ow it or		ap for e	each typ	e.
		_	s it fron	n your	homest	ead to t	the plac	e of co	llection	?			_
	(time	.)											

BEST PFE.COM
List of research project topics and materials

14. How do you transport from the homestead to and from the place of collection



	•	rcle, [ ] Private		-		•		
16. Is/are	these plants av	the wetland as a place ailable in other place y located? (describe	es out	side the we	tland? Y	Yes [ ] N		
18. Do yo	u also get thes	e plants from this so nt) is this source to y	urce(s	)? Yes [	No [	]		
21. Which	n of these source	plant your main occ ces do you use the m	ost?_					
23. Who a	are they?	ollect wild plant for						
25. If yes,	how many pe	labor to collect wild collection						
27. If yes	how much do	ight to collect wild pyou pay to collect the	iese m	aterials?		] No [	1	
29. If yes,	fill table belo				_	]		
Type of tool	Number							
30. What Type (Plant)	quantity (of ea	ch type of plant) do Quantity	you u	se personal Price	ly? (Per	time mont	h)	

31. What quantity did you give out? (Per time month) Type (Plant) **Ouantity** Price 32. What quantity did you give out in exchange? (Per time month) Type (Plant) Quantity Exchange for 33. What quantity did you sell? (Per month) Type (Plant) Quantity Price 34. Where did you sell them? 35. To whom did you sell them? 36. Did you incur transport cost to sell? Yes [ ] No [ ] 37. If yes, how much? \_\_ 38. In the last one year what is the highest and lowest price you sold wild plants When (Period) | Lowest Price Type **Highest Price** When (Period) 39. Can you provide price you sold this wild plants in the last five years?. Period Price Period Price 40. Do you make other product from wild plants? Yes [ ] No [ 41. If yes, what other products do you make from wild plants? (List) Product Product 42. In the last one year what is the highest and lowest price you sold these products? **Highest Price** When **Lowest Price** Type When 43. What else do you use collected wild plants for?\_ 44. How will you describe possibility to collect wild plant in the wetlands in the past five years? [ ] Increasing, [ ] Decreasing, [ ] Not changing, [ ] No Idea 45. Are you aware of impacts your plant collection activity is having on the wetland? Yes [] No [] 46. If yes list/explain 47. In the last 2 years (and maybe years prior) have you done anything to ameliorate this impact(s)? Yes [ l No [ 48. If yes what action have you taken (personally) to reduce impact so you could continue to have these benefits? 49. What did u do?\_

50. How much did the action cost you?



51. In th No		2 years l	has the	commu	ınity ta	ken any	action	to amel	iorate t	his imp	pact? Yo	es []
52. If ye		has bee	en done	to redu	ice imp	act so y	you cou	ld conti	nue to	have th	is bene	fit?
53. In the important		2 years l					on taker	n any ac	tion to	amelio	rate the	ese
54. Whi	ch orga	anizatio	n?									
55. Wha	at did th	ney do?										
C. Collection 1. How long		_			allaatio	on of bu	ildina r	notoriol	e from	tha wa	tland?	
1. How long	, mave y	ou deel	1 111 01 1	eu III c	onecn	)II 01 UU	mumg i	iiaici iai	S IIOIII	ille we	tialiu i	
2. How man	v house	eholds d	lo vou l	cnow to	be inv	olved i	n this a	ctivity i	n the w	etland'	)	
Mashushu _	•		•					•				
3. Which typ										, 1 0011		
Plant Type			Plant				Plant 7		/			
Time type												
4. Have you	collect	ed these	e mater	ials in t	he last	one yea	ar? Yes	[ ] No	[	]		
4. Have you collected these materials in the last one year? Yes [ ] No [ ]  5. How often do you collect each of these materials in a month/year?												
6. How many people involved in the collection per month for your household?												
7. How long	7. How long do each spend?											
8. What quantity do you collect a month/year?												
9. How long does it take to collect this quantity?persons/month												
10. In the la				tity of e			naterials			et? (Op	tional)	
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Freq. of												
Collection												
Quantity												
collected	1 '1	••	1 111	C 1						/6		
11. Can you								1	<u> </u>			
A '1 1 '1'.	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Availability												
Harvesting												
period 12. Which p	ort of th	ha watla	and do a	you got	thosa l	wilding	motori	olo? Cha	av it or	tha m	on for a	o o b
13. How lon			-	_		_					-	
(time)	ig is it i	TOTH YO	ui iioiii	csicau	o me p	iacc oi	COHECH	OII :				-
14. How do	vou tra	nsport f	from the	e home	stead to	and fr	om the	nlace of	collec	tion		
	•	[ ](				te car, [		•	olic tran			
15. Why do	_		-		_	_				_		
16. Is/are the	•				-			•			No[]	
17. If yes, w					_							
18. Do you a	also get	these n	naterial	s from	this so	urce(s)?	Yes [	] No	[ ]			
19. How acc	_											
20. Which o	f these	sources	do you	use th	e most	?						
20. Is collec	tion of	building	g mater	ial you	r main	occupat	tion?					



21. How many 22. Who are the		llect l	ouilding material	for you	!?			<del></del>
	•	labor	to collect building	ng mate	rial? Yes	[ ] No [	 1	
24. If yes, how						[][		
•	• •		ling materials? Y	es [	] No [		]	
			ay to collect these					
			or collection of b	ouilding	material	s? Yes [	] No [	]
28. If yes, fill			(D	****	11.1			
Type of tool	Number		ource (Rent, gift, heritance etc.) When did Averagely how you acquire it long does it wor					How much
		111110	eritance etc.)	you ac	equire it	long doe	S IL WOLK	do you pay for it
								101 10
_								
29. What quar	ntity (of eac	h typ	e of material) do	you use	e persona	lly? (Per t	ime mon	th)
Type (Plant)		(	Quantity	-	Price			
	ntity did yo		e out? (Per time r	nonth)	ъ.		1	
Type (Plant)		(	Quantity		Price			
							-	
21 What appr	stitu did vo	11 0111	e out in exchange	2 (Dor t	ima man	th)		
Type (Plant)	itity ala yo		Quantity	(Per t	Exchan		1	
Type (Flain)			Qualitity		Excitati	ge ioi	-	
							_	
32. What quar	ntity did yo	u sell	? (Per month)				]	
Type (Plant)			Quantity		Price		]	
			•				-	
33. Where did	you sell th	em?					•	
34. To whom	-							
		ort co	st? Yes [ ] No [	]				
36. If yes, how						111 11		
	one year w	hat is	the highest and l					
Туре			Highest Price	wnen	(Period)	Lowest	Price	When (Period)
38 Can you n	rovide pric	e vou	sold this building	g mater	ials in the	last five	vears?	
Period P	TOVIGE PITE	Price		Perio		c last live	Price	
101104		11100		1 011	- <del>-</del>		11100	
39. Do you ma	ake other p	roduc	t from collected i	materia	s? Yes [		] No [	]



### 40. If yes, what other products? (List)

48. What did you do?\_\_\_\_\_

Product		Product					
41. In the last one year v	what is the highest and l	owest price yo	ou sold these produc	ts?i			
Type	Highest Price	When	Lowest Price	When			
42. What else do you us	e collected materials for	r?					
43. How will you descri	be possibility to collect	building mate	rials in the wetlands	in the past five			
years? [] Increasing, []	Decreasing, [] Not cha	nging, [ ] No l	Idea				
44. Are you aware of im	pacts your collection ac	ctivity is havin	g on the wetland? Y	'es [ ] No [ ]			
45. If yes list/explain							
46. In the last 2 years (a	nd maybe years prior) h	ave you done	anything to amelior	ate this			
impact(s)? Yes []No							
47. If yes what action ha	ve you taken (personal)	ly) to reduce in	mpact so you could	continue to have			
these benefits?							

50. In the last 2 years has the community taken any action to ameliorate this impact? Yes [] No []

51. If yes what has been done to reduce impact so you could continue to have this benefit?

49. How much did the action cost you? \_\_\_\_\_

52. In the last 2 years has any external organization taken any action to ameliorate these impacts? Yes[ ] No[ ] I don't know []

53. Which organization?

54. What did they do?\_\_\_\_\_



# **D. Arts and Craft Material Collection**

1. Ho	ow long	have yo	u been i	nvolve	ed in co	llection	of craf	t materi	als fro	m the v	vetland <sup>c</sup>	?
2 11		househ	alda da	12011 les	novy to 1	ha inval	lyad in	thic octi	ivity in	the m	otland?	
	ow many ishu			-					-			now
Masire		_, 141apa	<u> </u>	, 1710	untiune	, 1	·10114 _	, 00		, 1	don t Ki	.10 W
3. W	hich type	e of art a	and craf	t mate	rials do	you col	llect fro	om the v	vetland	l? (List	2)	
Plant 7	Гуре		Pl	ant Ty	pe		Pla	ant Type	e			
	ow often	•						-				
	ow many				e collec	ction pe	r montl	n for you	u?			-
	ow long		•									
	hat quan				-							, .
	ow long				_	-					persons/	
9. In	the last	one year Nov								1		
Frag of	Oct	NOV	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Freq. of Collection												
Quantity												
collected												
	an you de	escribe a	vailabi	lity of	each ma	aterial i	n relatio	on to fai	rming s	seasons	(for ea	ch)?
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Availabilit							_					
Harvesting												
period												
11. W	hich part	t of the	wetland	do you	ı get the	ese art a	and craf	ft mater	ials? S	how it	on the n	nap
	r each ty	•										
	ow long	is it fron	n your l	nomest	ead to t	he place	e of col	lection?	?			_
,	me)		2				1.0		2			
	ow do yo	_					d from	_			n	
	Walking, hy do yo		Cycle, [		_	e car, [	llaat or	-	olic trai		,	
	are these				_							1
	yes, whe				_					. <b>C</b> 5 [ ]	110 [	J
	you als									o[]		
	ow acces	-										
19. W	hich of t	hese sou	irces do	you u	se the n	nost (rai	nk)					
20. Is	collectio	n of art	and cra	ft mate	erial you	ır main	occupa	ttion?				
	ow many						•	ι?				
	ho are th	-						1 NT-	г		_	
	you hir									]		
	yes, how o you pay							] No		1		
	yes how							_	L	J		
	yes now you use		-	-					als? Ye	s[]]	No [ ]	



28. If yes	, fill table be	low			
Type of tool	Number	Source (Rent, gift, inheritance etc.)	When did you acquire it	Averagely how long does it work	How much do you pay for it
	quantity (of	each type of materia		onally? (Per time	month)
Type (Plant)		Quantity	Price		
30. What	guantity did	you give out? (Per t	ime month)		
Type (Plant)	4	Quantity	Price		
31. What	quantity did	you give out in excl	nange? (Per time m	nonth)	
Type (Plant)		Quantity	Exchang		
32. What	quantity did	you sell? (Per mont	h)		
Type (Plant)		Quantity	Price		
34. To wh 35. Did you 36. If yes,	, how much?	sell them?sport cost to sell? Y			voft motoviala
Type	last one yea	r what is the highest Highest Price			When (Period)
		2	, , ,		,
38. Can y Period		orice you sold these i			
Period	r	Price	Period	Price	
-		r product from colle products? (List)	ected materials? Ye	es [ ] No [	]
Product	,	1	Product		
41. In the	last one yea	r what is the highest	and lowest price y	ou sold these pro	ducts?ii
Туре	<b>,</b>	Highest Price	When	Lowest Price	When
42. What					

- 43. How will you describe possibility to collect art materials in the wetlands in the past five years?
- [] Increasing, [] Decreasing, [] Not changing, [] No Idea
- 44. Are you aware of impacts your collection activity is having on the wetland? Yes [] No []

45. If v	yes list/e	explain										
46. In	6. In the last 2 years (and maybe years prior) have you done anything to ameliorate this impact(s)? Yes [ ] No [ ]											
47. If	yes what	action	have yo	u take	n (perso	-		_	-	u coul	d contir	nue to
		benefits										—
		ı do?								-		
		did the								1.7 .	.0.37	
No	In the last 2 years has the community taken any action to ameliorate this impact? Yes [] No []											
51. If :	. If yes what has been done to reduce impact so you could continue to have this benefit?											
	2. In the last 2 years has any external organization taken any action to ameliorate these impacts? Yes[ ] No[ ] I don't know [ ]											
		anizatio										
	_	hey do?										
E. Fuelwo	od Colle	ection										
1. Ho	w long	have you	u been :	involve	ed in co	llection	of fuel	wood fi	om the	wetlar	nd?	
How n	nany hou	iseholds	do you	ı know	to be in	nvolved	in this	activity	in the	wetlan	d?	
2. Ma	ashushu	, N	<b>l</b> apagar	ne	_, Mant	lane	, Mo	ila <b>_</b>	, Gener	al	_, I don	't
kn	ow											
3. WI	nich typ	e of fuel	wood r	nateria	ls do yo	u colle	ct from	the wet	land? (	List)		
Plant Type			Plant	Type			Plant 7	Гуре				
		do you						-				
5. Ho	w many	people	involve	ed in th	e collec	ction pe	r montl	n for yo	ur hous	ehold?	1	
			10									
	_	do each	_		1. /	0	<del>}</del>					
	_	tity do y			-							T
	_	does it t one year			_	-	sa mat	miolo di	d von a			lours
9. 111	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Freq. of	OCI	NOV	DCC	Jan	1.00	IVIai	Арі	iviay	Jun	Jui	Aug	Зері
Collection												
Quantity												
collected												
10. Ca	n you de	escribe a	ıvailabi	lity of	each ma	aterial i	n relati	on to fa	rming s	easons	(for ea	ch
pla	int)?	7 //										
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Availabilit												
Harvesting	400											
period												
	_	t of the v		-	-					e map	for each	ı type.
		is it fron	-			_						
		u transp					nd from	_			n	
	Valking,		Cycle, [		] Privat	_		_	olic tran	sport		
14. W	iv do ve	ou choos	e the w	etland	as a pla	ce to co	ollect fr	ielwood	1?			



		s available in other				es [ ]	No [ ]
		y located? (describe				r 1	
		e materials from thi					
		is source to you?					
		ces do you use the n					
		vood your main occ	_				
		ollect fuelwood for	-				
		labor to collect fue			 1 No [	1	-
		r collection				1	
		et fuelwood? Yes [			1		
•		you pay to collect the		-	J		
•		tools for collection			[ ] N	0 [	1
	fill table belo				. ,	~ [	,
Type of tool		Source (Rent,	How much				
-,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		gift, inheritance		n did you ire it	Averagely long does		do you pay
		etc.)	1		work		for it
		,					
29. What	quantity (of ea	ch type of material)	do yo	u use perso	nally? (Per	time m	onth)
Type (Plant)		Quantity		Price			•
30. What	quantity did yo	ou give out? (Per tin	ne mor	nth)			
Type (Plant)	<u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>	Quantity		Price			
		•					
31. What	quantity did yo	ou give out in excha	nge? (	Per time m	onth)		
Type (Plant)		Quantity		Exchange	e for		
32. What	quantity did yo	ou sell? (Per month)			<u> </u>		
Type (Plant)		Quantity		Price			
33. Where	did you sell t	hem?					
	om did you se						
•	_	ort cost? Yes [	] No [	]			
	how much? _						
	last one year v	what is the highest a					
Type		Highest Price	When	(Period)	Lowest Pri	ce V	When (Period)
• • •							
<u>-</u>		ce you sold fuelwoo				•	
Period	Prie	ce	Perio	od	P	rice	



20 5			,		11			7 . F	127	_		
39. Do	•		-			ted mat	erials?	Yes	] No	) [	J	
40. If yo	es, wha	t other j	product	s? (L1s	t)	- I D - 1						
Product						Prod	uct					
44 7 4	1 .			.1 1 1		1.1			11.1		giji	
41. In tl	ne last o	one year										
Type			Н	ighest	Price	When		Low	vest Pri	ce	When	
10 777	42. What else do you use collected materials for?											
<b>43.</b> Hov	-		_		-					in the	past fiv	e
•			_		_			[ ] No I		.1 10		
44. Are	-		_	your c	ollectic	n activ	ity is ha	ving on	the we	tland?	Yes[]	No [ ]
45. If yo						\ 1			1		1.	
46. In th					_	_	you ac	ne anyt	ning to	amen	orate thi	.S
•	act(s)?	_		] No	_	]	to moduc		at aa 110	1	doontin	to
47. If yo					_			е ппрас		u cou	a contin	iue to
	48. What did you do?											
	49. How much did the action cost you?											
No No		2 years	nas tne	Commi	anny ta	Ken any	action	to unior	iorate t	1113 1111	pact. 1	23 [ ]
	51. If yes what has been done to reduce impact so you could continue to have this benefit?											
· - · J	51. If you what has been done to reduce impact so you could continue to have this beliefit:											
52. In tl	ne last 2	2 years	has any	extern	al orga	nizatior	taken a	any acti	on to a	melior	ate these	<del></del>
		es[ ] l	-		_			,				
53. Whi												
54. Wh	at did tl	hey do?										
F. Fishing (	only re	elevant	if actua	al fishi	ng is de	one in t	he wetl	and)				
1. Hov	v long l	nave yo	u been	involve	ed in fis	hing fr	om the	wetland	?			
2. Hov	v many	househ	olds do	you kı	now to	be invo	lved in	this acti	vity in	the we	etland?	
Mashus	hu	_, Mapa	igane _	, M	antlane	, ]	Moila _	, Ge	neral _	, I	don't kı	now
3. Whi	ich type	e of fish	do you	ı collec	t from	the wet	land? (L	ist)				
Plant Type			Plant	Type			Plant 7	Гуре				
4. Hov	v often	do you	fish in	a mont	h/year?				_			
	-				shing p	er mont	th for yo	our hous	sehold?			
	_	do each	-									
	•		•		•							
	_				_	-					persons	/week
9. In the				<del></del>				you col				1
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Freq. of												





Collection												
Quantity												
collected												
10. Can	you des	scribe a	vailabil	ity of f	fish in r	elation	to farm	ing sea	sons (fo	or each	plant)?	
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Availability												
Harvesting												
period												
11. Which part of the wetland do you get these fishes? Show it on the map for each type.												
12. Hov	v long is	it fron	n your h	omest	ead to t	he plac	e of fish	ning? _				
13. Hov	-	_						_				
	alking, [											
14. Wh	-				_						_	
15. Is/aı			_				-				lo [ ]	
16. If ye			-					_				
17. Do	•	_				_		_				
18. Hov				-								
19. Whi				-								
20. Is fi			_							-		
	21. How many people fish for you?											
		•				0.37					-	
23. Do :							[]No[		]			
24. If ye												
25. Do					!? Yes	No		]				
26. If ye			•	•		1 41	10 37	г	1 NT.	r	1	
27. Do				or iisn	ıng ın ı	ne weu	and? Y	es [	] No	) [	J	
28. If yo				a a (D a a	-4	XX71	. 4:4	A -	1 -	. 1	Ham	1-
Type of tool	Numi	ber		ce (Rei			ı did yo		eragely			much
			_	inherita	ance	acqui	re ii		ig does	11	_	u pay
			etc.)			1		WC	OFK.		for it	
20 11/15	.4	(af a			a4 a mi a 1\	d			-2 (Dan	4:	4la \	
29. Wha	at quanti	ity (of e			ateriai)	do you		rsonany	// (Per	ume m	onun)	
Type (Fish)			Quar	ıııty			Price					
20 11/1		' 1' 1	<u> </u>	40	(D		(1.)					
30. Wha	at quanti	ity dia y			(Per tin	ne mon						
Type (Fish)	ype (Fish) Quantity Price											
31. What quantity did you give out in exchange? (Per time month)												
	at quanti	ity did y			n excha	nge? (P			)			
Type (Fish)	Type (Fish) Quantity Exchange for											
	32. What quantity did you sell? (Per month)											
L Type (Fish)	Type (Fish) Quantity Price											



33. Where did you	soll the	?					
34. To whom did					-		
35. Did you incur			1 No [ ]				
36. If yes, how mu							
37. In the last one				ou sold f	ishes?		
Type	<i>y</i> • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Highest Price	When (Period)			When (Period)	
1)   1		Tinginese Tine	(1 0110 0)	2011050		(1 011 (2 0110 0)	
38. Can you provi	de price	vou sold fish in t	he last five vears	<u>!                                    </u>		1	
Period	Price	<u> </u>	Period		Price		
39. Do you make	other pro	oduct from fish?	Yes [	] No [		]	
40. If yes, what of	-		·			-	
Product	1	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Product				
41. In the last one	year wh	nat is the highest a	and lowest price y	ou sold t	hese pro	oducts?iv	
Туре		Highest Price	When	Lowest		When	
42. What else do y	ou use	fish for?					
43. How will you	describe	e possibility to fish	h in the wetlands	in the pas	st five y	ears?	
[] Increasing, [] I		-	-				
44. Are you aware	_		is having on the v	vetland?	Yes [ ] N	No [ ]	
45. If yes list/expl							
46. In the last 2 ye			or) have you done	e anything	g to ame	eliorate this	
impact(s)? Yes	_	] No [	]				
47. If yes what act		-		_	you co	ould continue to	
48. What did u do		:					
	49. How much did the action cost you?						
50. In the last 2 years has the community taken any action to ameliorate this impact? Yes [] No []							
51. If yes what has	hoon d	ona to raduca imr	oot so you could	continua	to hove	this banafit?	
31. If yes what has	s deem u	one to reduce mi	bact so you could	Continue	to nave	tills beliefit!	
52. In the last 2 ye	ars has	any external orga	nization taken an	v action t	o ameli	orate these	
•		] I don't know		, 4000011 0	- union		
53. Which organization?  54. What did they do?							



G. Hunting												
1. How long	-				_							
2. How man	-		-					-				
Mashushu _	, M	apagane	ė,	Mantla	ane	_, Moil	la,	Genera	ıl	, I don	t know	
3. Which typ	e of ga	mes do	you co	llect fr	om the	wetlan	d? (List	)				
Plant Type			Plant 7	Гуре			Plant 7	Гуре				
5. How often	ı do yo	u hunt i	n a mor	nth/yea	r?							
6. How man	y peopl	e involv	ved in h	unting	for yo	u per m	onth?_					
7. How long		•							_			
8. What quan	ntity do	you co	llect a 1	month/	year? _							
9. How long	does it	take to	collect	this qu	antity	?					Hours	
10. In the las	st one y	ear wha	at quant	ity of e	each ga	me type	e did yo	u collec	t? (Op	tional)		
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Freq. of												
Collection												
Quantity												
collected												
11. Can you	describ	e availa	ability o	of game	es in re	lation to	o farmii	ng seaso	ns (for	each p	lant)?	•
	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept
Availability												
Harvesting												
period												
12. Which pa	art of th	ne wetla	ınd do y	ou get	these g	games?	Show i	t on the	map fo	or each	type.	
13. How lon	g is it f	rom you	ar home	estead t	to the p	lace of	hunting	g?				
14. How do	you tra	nsport f	rom the	home	stead to	and fr	om this	place?				
[ ] Wa	alking,	[ ](	Cycle, [		] Privat	te car, [		] Pub	lic trar	isport		
15. Why do	you cho	oose the	wetlan	d as a	place to	o hunt?						
16. Is/are the	ere altei	rnative <sub>l</sub>	places o	outside	the we	tland yo	ou can l	nunt? Y	es [	] [	No [ ]	
17. If yes, w	here are	e they lo	ocated?	(descr	ibe or s	show or	map					
18. Do you a	also get	hunt fr	om this	source	e(s)? Ye	es [	] No	[ ]				
19. How acc	essible	is this s	source t	o you?								
20. Which of	f these	sources	do you	use th	e most	(rank)_						
20. Is huntin	g your	main o	ecupatio	on?								
21. How man			•									
22. Who are												
23. Do you h									]			
24. If yes, ho	ow man	y per co	ollection	n							_	
25. Do you p	25. Do you pay to hunt in the wetland? Yes [ ] No [ ]											
-	26. If yes how much do you pay?											
27. Do you u	ise spec	cific too	ols for h	unting	in the	wetland	l? Yes [	] No	[	]		



28. If	yes,	fill	table	be]	low
--------	------	------	-------	-----	-----

28. If yes, fill	28. If yes, fill table below								
Type of tool	Number	Source (Rent,		n did you		gely how	How much		
		gift, inheritance	acqu	ire it	long d	oes it	do you pay		
		etc.)			work		for it		
29. What quar	29. What quantity (of each type of material) do you use personally? (Per time month)								
Type (game)		Quantity		Price					

Type (game)	Quantity	Price
	0.75 1 1)	

30. What quantity did you give out? (Per time month)

Type (game)	Quantity	Price

31. What quantity did you give out in exchange? (Per time month)

Type (game)	Quantity	Exchange for

32. What quantity did you sell? (Per month)

Type (Fish)	Quantity	Price

- 33. Where did you sell them? \_\_\_
- 34. To whom did you sell them?
- 35. Did you incur transport cost? Yes [ ] No [ ]
- 36. If yes, how much? \_
- 37. In the last one year what is the highest and lowest price you sold games?

Type	Highest Price	When (Period)	Lowest Price	When (Period)

38. Can you provide price you sold game in the last five years?.

Period	Price	Period	Price

- 39. Do you make other product from games? Yes [ ] No [
- 40. If yes, what other products? (List)

Product	Product

41. In the last one year what is the highest and lowest price you sold these products?

Type	Highest Price	When	Lowest Price	When

- 42. What else do you use games for?
- 43. How will you describe possibility to games in the wetlands in the past five years?
- [] Increasing, [] Decreasing, [] Not changing, [] No Idea



44. Are you aware of	impacts y	our hunting is h	aving on the wet	tland? Yes [ ]	No [ ]	
45. If yes list/explain						
46. In the last 2 years	(and may	be years prior) h	nave you done ar	nything to am	eliorate this	
impact(s)? Yes [	] No	[ ]				
47. If yes what action	have you	taken (personal	ly) to reduce im	pact so you c	ould continue to ha	ive
these benefits?						
48. What did you do?						
49. How much did the	e action co	ost you?				
50. In the last 2 years	has the co	ommunity taken	any action to an	neliorate this	impact? Yes [] No	) []
51. If yes what has be	en done t	o reduce impact	so you could co	ntinue to hav	e this benefit?	
52. In the last 2 years	has any e	xternal organiza	tion taken any a	ction to amel	iorate these impact	es?
Yes[ ] No[ ] I do	n't know	[]				
53. Which organization	on?					
54. What did they do?	?					-
H. Water						
1. How long have you	been col	lecting water fro	om the wetland?			
2. How many househo	olds do yo	ou know to be in	volved in this ac	tivity in the v	wetland?	
Mashushu, Map	agane	, Mantlane	, Moila,	General	_, I don't know	
3. Which quantity of						
week?			•			
Water for	Source	Location on	Quantity	Frequency	Length of time	Number of
		the map	Collected per	of	using wetland	households
		1	day	collection	for this purpose	
Drinking and			,		1 1	
cooking						
Washing clothes						
Bathing						
Building purposes						
Watering of small						
livestock(eg rabbits)						
Watering gardens						
Other specify						
4. Why do you collect	t water fr	 	)			
5. Do you have altern						_
6. If yes, do you also						
7. How accessible is t			011.7			
		•				
8. Which of these sou	-					<del></del>
8. How many people of Who are they?		-				
9. Who are they?	a o 1 1 a k		Vac I INT- I			
10. Do you hire extern						
11. If yes, how many	_					
12. How much do you					_	
13. Do you pay to col			]			
14. If yes how much of	io you pa	y to collect wate	r?			



15. Do you use specific tools for collecting water? Yes [ ] No [

16. If yes, fill table below

Type of tool	Number	Source	When did you acquire it	Averagely how long does it work	How much do you pay for it

17. How do you transport to and from the place of collection
[ ] Walking, [ ] Cycle, [ ] Private car, [ ] Public transport
18. What quantity of water collected do you use personally? (Per time mentioned above)
19. What quantity do you give out?
20. What quantity do you sell?
21. What else do you use collected water for?
22. How will you describe possibility to collect water in the wetlands in the past five years?
[ ] Increasing, [ ] Decreasing, [ ] Not changing, [ ] I don't know
23. Are you aware of impacts your water collection activity is having on the wetland?
Yes [ ] No [ ]
24. If yes list/explain
25. In the last 2 years (and maybe years prior) have you done anything to ameliorate this
impact(s)? Yes [ ] No [ ]
26. If yes what action have you taken (personally) to reduce impact so you could continue to have
these benefits?
27. What did you do?
28. How much did the action cost you?
29. In the last 2 years has the community taken any action to ameliorate this impact? Yes [] No [
30. If yes what has been done to reduce impact so you could continue to have this benefit?
31. In the last 2 years has any external organization taken any action to ameliorate these impacts?
Yes No I don't know []
32. Which organization?
33. What did they do?
34. Did you experience any water related disease in the last year?
35. If yes, explain (ascertain cost of treatment)



<b>I. Livestoo</b> 1. How lor		ou beer	n invol	ved in livesto	ck graz	ing activi	ty in tl	ne wetla	and area?	
	•		•	ou know to b				•	g? , I don't know	7
				occupation?						<i>'</i>
3. Is fivesα 4. Fill for ε					i es [		JINO	L	]	
Livestock		How		How many	Цот	How ma	22.7	How	How many	How
							-		exchanged?	
categories	-		many	_				many	_	many
	the	born?	dead?		sold?	consump	ouon?	do	(+/-)	today?
	season							you		
								give		
								out		
								as		
G1 /								gift?		
Cattle/										
Cow										
Donkeys										
Sheep										
Goats										
Poultry										
Rabbits										
Pigs										
Milk produ	<u>iction</u>			•						
5. How ma	ny cows	or goat	ts that p	roduce milk	do you	have in th	ne seas	on? Co	ws Goat	ts
6. How mu	ich milk	do each	produ	ce per week?	Cows		,	Goats		
7. What qu	antity of	f milk d	o you u	se for househ	old cor	nsumption	n per w	/eek? _		
8. What do	you do	with the	e rest?_							
Draught pe	<u>ower</u>									
9. Did you	use som	e of you	ur lives	tock for plow	ing or t	transport i	in crop	ping se	ason? Yes 🗆	No □
10. If yes,	how mar	ny anim	als and	of which typ	e did y	ou use for	this?			
Type of an	imals		N	umber			Use [	plowin	g, transport]	
Cows										
Donkeys										
11. How m	any day	s did yo	u use t	hem last crop	ping se	ason for y	our ov	wn need	ls and what ar	ea did
you plow v		-		_	1 0	,				
Type of an				Days used f	for trans	sport		Pl	lowing	
) F - 01 am				,	•••••	. r	(	lays	Area	
Cows									71100	
Donkey										
_ = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =										

12. Did you rent or lend your animal for plowing or transport last cropping season? Yes  $\square$  No  $\square$ 

(Specify unit\_\_\_



13. If yes specify how many days and the area plowed?

Type of animals			Days u	sed for	transport			Plowin	g	1///	
							days		area		
Cows											
Donkey											
14. What did you red	ceive in	exchar	nge?								
Cash				□ Hov	w much fo	or one d	lay?				
Labour				□How	many m	an-days	s for one	day of	work?		
other				□spec	ify						
Manure production											
15. Did you collect t	he manı	ure pro	duced b	y your a	animals f	or fertil	izing yo	ur plots	last cro	pping	
season?										/	
Yes □				No □							
16. If yes, from which animals and how did you collect it? (for example, collect manure produced											
at night in the kraal)											
Cattle											
Goats/sheep											
Donkeys											
Pigs											
Poultry											
17. How many carts	(or othe	er mear	n of mea	asure) of	f manure	did you	collect	in cropp	ping sea	son?	
18. Did you exchang	ge or giv	e away	y manur	e to you	r relative	s or nei	ghbors?	Yes □		No □	
19. If yes, how many	carts?			7 .							
20. What did you red	ceive in	exchar	nge?								
Cash				□ Hov	v much fo	or one c	art?				
Labour					many m	an-days	s for one	cart?			
other				□spec	ify						
Other livestock prod											
21. Did you get other	r anima	l produ	ict in the	e coppir	ig season	? Yes $\Box$	]			No □	
22. If yes, specify,											
Which produ											
From which											
The quantity	•/										
For which us			_		_						
If sold or ex		d specif	fy price	or agair	ist what?						
Source of feed / graz	//						_				
23. Do you let your l		_					No 🗆				
24. If yes, indicate th										ı	
Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	Apri	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
	3/					1					
Cattle											
Donkeys											
Goats											
Sheep											

25. Indicate on the map which part of the wetland you use for livestock grazing?



- 26. If no, why?
- 27. Which other grazing area do you use for your livestock? (locate them on the map)
- 28. Indicate the periods when you let your livestock graze/browse in this area?

	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	March	April	May	June	July	Aug	Sept
Cattle												
Donkeys												
Goats												
Sheep												

Donkeys												l
Goats												
Sheep												
29. Did yo	oats											
30. If yes s	pecify											
$\mathbf{W}$	hich plar	nts,										
$\mathbf{W}$	here did	you coll	lect ther	n? (dryl	and, we	tland, irri	igation sc	heme; i	f wetlar	d locate	on a	
ma	ıp)											
Fo	r which	and how	many a	animals	?							
W	hat quar	ntity did	you col	lect?								
Но	w much	time di	d von sr	ent in c	collectio	n?						

- 31. Do you cultivate forage to feed your livestock? Yes  $\square$  No  $\square$
- 32. If yes what quantity
- 33. For which and how many animals is the forage used?

Who in the household did it?

- 34. What is the mode of distribution? (free grazing, in the kraal...)
- 35. Do you use crop residue for feeding your livestock? Yes □ No □
- 36. If yes specify

From which crops,

On which plot? (dryland, wetland, irrigation scheme; locate on a map)

For which and how many animals?

What is the mode of distribution? (free grazing, in the kraal...)

What quantity did you use?

How much time did you spent in collection?

Who in the household did it?

#### **Livestock production costs**

37. Did you buy any feed for your livestock last cropping season? (Including complement, salt...)

What do you	For which	When?	Quantity	Price	To whom?
buy?	animals?				



38. How much did spend last farming season on veterinary expenses?

	Dry season	Wet season	Total	
Cattle				
Donkeys				
Goats				
Sheep				
39. Did you d	o any work on fence	es last farming season?		
Type of work	Cost of	Number of days	Number of days	Cost per day
	implement	of family labour	of hired labour	
Build a new				
fence				
Repair a fence	2			
		or your livestock in crop		
41. How many	y people take your l	ivestock for grazing for y	you?	
42. Who are the	hey?			
43. Do you hi	re external labor to	take your livestock for gr	razing? Yes [ ] No	[ ]
44. If yes, how	v many per time			_
• •	y to graze your live		No [ ]	
	much do you pay?			
47. Do your li	vestock drink from	the wetland? Yes [	] No [	]
48. If yes, who	at quantity/how ofte	en, for how long?		
49. What other	er sources of water of	lo you have for your lives	stock? (List)	
		retland for your livestock		[ ]
51. What quai		<u>.</u>		
52. Locate on	the map where you	get water for your livest	ock.	
53. What othe	er wetland products	do your livestock feed or	n? (List)	
54. How will	you describe grazin	g potential in the wetland	d area in the past five	years?
[ ] Incr	easing, [	Decreasing, [	Not changing, [	] I don't know
55. Why do yo	ou graze your livest	ock's in the wetland?	·····	
56. Is/are thes	e plants available ir	other places outside the	wetland? Yes [	] No [ ]
57. If yes, who	ere are they located	?		
58. Do you als	so get from this sou	rce?		
59. How acces	ssible is it to you? _			

60. If you do not have access anymore to graze in the wetland, what alternative do you have?

